

502P1336 WOOD

(19) 日本国特許庁 (J P)

(12) 公開特許公報 (A)

(11) 特許出願公開番号

特開2000-285027

(P 2 0 0 0 - 2 8 5 0 2 7 A)

(43) 公開日 平成12年10月13日 (2000. 10. 13)

(51) Int. Cl. ⁷	識別記号	F I	ターコード	(参考)
G06F 12/14	320	G06F 12/14	320	E 5B017

審査請求 未請求 請求項の数17 O L (全20頁)

(21) 出願番号	特願平11-87007	(71) 出願人	000005821 松下電器産業株式会社 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地
(22) 出願日	平成11年3月29日 (1999. 3. 29)	(72) 発明者	久野 良樹 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器産業株式会社内
		(72) 発明者	西村 拓也 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器産業株式会社内
		(74) 代理人	100092794 弁理士 松田 正道

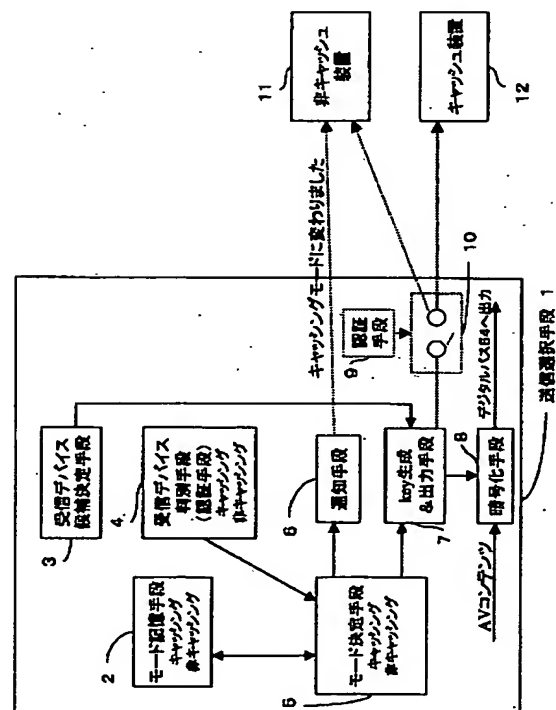
最終頁に続く

(54) 【発明の名称】 キャッシュ装置、送信装置及びプログラム記録媒体

(57) 【要約】

【課題】 著作権主張されたデータを視聴者が任意の時間に視聴出来、またデータを記録装置から別の記録装置に移動出来るようにすると、著作権者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ない。

【解決手段】 データを記録する記録手段と、著作権主張されているデータを一回だけ再生する再生手段と、著作権の内容に応じていずれの装置にデータを利用出来るようにするかを選択する送信選択手段1とを備えたことを特徴とするキャッシュ装置である。



【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項 1】 データを記録する記録手段と、
前記データが著作権主張されている場合、前記記録手段
により記録された前記データの著作権主張の内容を変え
ずに前記データを 1 回だけ再生する再生手段とを備え、
複数の相手先装置に接続されたキャッシュ装置であつ

て、
接続された前記相手先装置のうち、前記再生手段が再生
したデータを、いずれの相手先の装置に著作権の内容に
応じて利用出来るようにするかを選択する送信選択手段
とを備えたことを特徴とするキャッシュ装置。

【請求項 2】 前記送信選択手段は、著作権主張された
データを送る場合、前記相手先の装置のうち、
前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台以上存在
する場合は、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置の
一台のみに、または前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する
装置を除いて、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有しない装
置全部に著作権の内容に応じて前記データを利用出来る
ようにし、

前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台も存在し
ない場合は、前記相手先装置の全部に著作権の内容に応
じて前記データを利用出来るようにすることを特徴とす
る請求項 1 記載のキャッシュ装置。

【請求項 3】 前記送信選択手段は、暗号化された著作
権主張されたデータを復号化するための鍵を前記相手先
の装置に渡すことによって前記相手先の装置を選択する
ことを特徴とする請求項 1 または 2 記載のキャッシュ装
置。

【請求項 4】 前記送信選択手段は、接続されている前
記相手先の装置に予めデータを復号化するための鍵を配
布しておき、いずれの鍵で著作権主張されたデータを暗
号化するかによって、前記相手先の装置を選択すること
を特徴とする請求項 1 または 2 記載のキャッシュ装置。

【請求項 5】 前記送信選択手段は、前記鍵を前記相手
先の装置に渡す前に前記相手先の装置と認証を行い、認
証に成功した場合のみ前記鍵を渡すことを特徴とする請
求項 3 または 4 記載のキャッシュ装置。

【請求項 6】 前記送信選択手段は、前記キャッシュ装
置の機能を有しない前記相手先の装置が一台も受信して
いないときは、前記キャッシュ装置を探し出して、前記
キャッシュ装置に前記鍵を受け取るための認証要求を出
すように命じることを特徴とする請求項 5 記載のキャッ
シュ装置。

【請求項 7】 前記送信選択手段は、前記鍵を前記相手
先の装置に渡す際に、前記相手先の装置との認証の際に
使用した一時的な鍵で前記鍵を暗号化して前記相手先の
装置に渡すことを特徴とする請求項 5 記載のキャッシュ
装置。

【請求項 8】 前記送信選択手段は、前記データが著作
権主張されていない (copy free) 場合、前記

データを暗号化しないことを特徴とする請求項 1 ~ 7 の
いずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置。

【請求項 9】 前記著作権の内容とは、1 回だけ視聴す
ることを許可する複製禁止 (copy never)、
1 回だけ複製することを許可する (copy one g
eneration)、これ以上の複製は許可しない
(no more copy) のいずれかであることを
特徴とする請求項 1 ~ 8 のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ
装置。

【請求項 10】 前記接続された相手先装置のうち、一
台は本キャッシュ装置に直接接続されているモニタであ
ることを特徴とする請求項 1 ~ 9 のいずれかに記載のキ
ャッシュ装置。

【請求項 11】 データを出力する出力手段とを備え、
複数の相手先装置に接続された送信装置であつて、
接続された前記相手先装置のうち、前記出力手段が出力
したデータを、いずれの相手先の装置に著作権の内容に
応じて利用出来るようにするかを選択する送信選択手段
とを備え、

前記相手先装置の中に、請求項 1 ~ 10 のいずれかに記
載のキャッシュ装置を一台以上含むかもしくは一台も含
まないことを特徴とする送信装置。

【請求項 12】 前記送信選択手段は、著作権主張され
たデータを送る場合、前記相手先の装置のうち、
前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台以上存在
する場合は、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置の
一台のみに、または前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する
装置を除いて、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有しない装
置全部に著作権の内容に応じて前記データを利用出来る
ようにし、

前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台も存在し
ない場合は、前記相手先装置の全部に著作権の内容に応
じて前記データを利用出来るようにすることを特徴とす
る請求項 11 記載の送信装置。

【請求項 13】 データをアナログ出力するアナログ出
力手段と、

前記データをデジタル出力するデジタル出力手段とを備
え、

前記デジタル出力手段が著作権主張されたデータをデジ
タル出力するとき、前記アナログ出力手段のアナログ出
力を無効にすることを特徴とする送信装置。

【請求項 14】 データを記録する記録手段と、
前記データが著作権主張されている場合、前記著作権の
内容を変えずに前記データを 1 回だけ再生する再生手段
とを備えた記録再生装置に対して、前記デジタル出力手
段が著作権主張されたデータをデジタル出力するとき、
前記アナログ出力手段のアナログ出力を無効にすること
を特徴とする請求項 13 記載の送信装置。

【請求項 15】 前記接続された相手先装置のうち、一
台は本送信装置に直接接続されているモニタであること

を特徴とする請求項11または12記載の送信装置。

〔請求項16〕 前記著作権の内容とは、1回だけ視聴することを許可する複製禁止 (copy never)、1回だけ複製することを許可する (copy one generation)、これ以上の複製は許可しない (no more copy) のいずれかであることを特徴とする請求項11～15のいずれかに記載の送信装置。

〔請求項17〕 請求項1～16のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置または送信装置の各構成要素の一部または全部の機能をコンピュータに実行させるためのプログラムを格納していることを特徴とするプログラム記録媒体。

〔発明の詳細な説明〕

〔0001〕

〔発明の属する技術分野〕 本発明は、複数の機器が接続されている場合に、著作権主張されたデータを扱うキャッシュ装置、送信装置及びプログラム記録媒体に関するものである。

〔0002〕

〔従来の技術〕 家庭のシステム、オフィスや業務システムにおいて、デジタル化とマルチメディア化のニーズが高まっている。このような状況の中にあって近年注目されているのがIEEE1394-1995である (以下IEEE1394バスと称す)。これは1995年にIEEEで規格化された高速シリアル・バス標準である。IEEE1394バスは、プラグ&プレイやマルチメディア・データ転送のための特徴的な機能を備えている。つまりビデオや音声といったデータを転送するための帯域を確保し、リアルタイム転送を可能にするアイソクロナス・データ転送 (Isynchronous) を持つ。またIEEE1394バスで接続されたPCの制御プログラムからIEEE1394制御コマンド (アシンクロナス (非同期) データ) によってデジタルカメラなどの映像データの制御 (映像データの切り替え、カメラの制御) を同時に行うこともできる。

〔0003〕 このような標準であるIEEE1394バスに基づいて映像音声データなどのデータをやり取りする際に、データが著作権を持っている場合がある。データの著作権の内容はCGMS (Copy generation management system) とCGMSから生成されるEMI (Encryption Mode Indicator) で表される。

〔0004〕 CGMSは放送局から送られてくるトランスポートストリームの内部に存在している。CGMSは2ビットのデータであり、CGMSの取りうる値とその意味は次のようになる。

〔0005〕 すなわちCGMS=11のときcopy neverを意味し、CGMS=10のときcopy one generationを意味し、CGMS=0

0のときcopy freeを意味する。ただしcopy neverは複製禁止のことであり、そのデータを1回だけ視聴することを許可するものである。copy one generationは1世代のみ複製を許可するものであり、複製したデータは何度でも繰り返して視聴することができるものである。copy freeは自由に複製してよいことを示すものである。

〔0006〕 CGMSが11のときすなわちcopy neverのとき、データは一回だけ視聴することが出来る。すなわちそのデータが放送されている時間帯に限りそのデータを視聴することができる。

〔0007〕 またEMIはCGMSからSTB (Set Top Box : 衛星放送受信器) で生成される。つまりCGMSは放送局でデータに付加され、放送局から送られてくる放送波を受信したSTBはIEEE1394バスに受信した番組を流す。この時CGMSはアイソクロナス・パケットデータのMPEG2トランスポートストリームのサービス情報の部分に埋め込まれる。一つのアシクロナス・パケットデータには複数のMPEGデータが格納されており、各MPEGデータに対して、それぞれ対応するCGMSが存在する。

〔0008〕 EMIはこのようなCGMSからSTBによって生成される。STBは一つのアシクロナス・パケットデータで送信する各データのCGMSを調べその代表値として一つのアシクロナス・パケットデータに一つのEMIを付与する。そのEMIはアイソクロナス・パケットデータのヘッダ部分に保持される。

〔0009〕 EMIの値は、一つのアシクロナス・パケットデータの中に存在するデータのCGMSのうちで、著作権の制限が最も厳しいCGMSの値をとる。例えば、一つのアシクロナス・パケットデータの中のデータのCGMSが11、10、10であったとすると、EMIの値は最も制限が厳しい11になる。またCGMSが10、10、00、00である場合は、EMIの値はその中で最も制限が厳しい10となる。このようにしてEMIの値が決定される。

〔0010〕 EMIの取り得る値は、EMI=11が複製禁止 (copy never) を表し、EMI=10が一世代のみ複製を許可 (copy one generation) を表し、EMI=00が複製自由 (copy free) を表す。ここまでは、CGMSと同じである。EMIだけのものとして、EMI=01があって、これはcopy one generationのデータを記録した後にEMIが変更されたもので、これ以上の複製は不許可 (no more copy) を表す。

〔0011〕 従来、CGMSによる著作権の内容がcopy neverの場合は該当するデータを一回だけ視聴することができるが、視聴できる時間帯は番組が放送されている時間帯に限られていた。このように一回だけ

視聴を許可するというのが著作権者の意図である場合には視聴できる時間帯まで限定されてしまう。すなわち視聴者が自分の都合のよい時間帯に番組を視聴したい場合であっても、番組が放送される時間帯にしかその番組を視聴できなかった。またCGMSによる著作権の内容がcopy one generationの場合に、一度ある記録媒体に記録してしまうと、その他の記録媒体へデータを移動することができなかった。

【0012】またトランスポートデコーダを持たないような装置構成の場合などは、EMIを用いて、著作権の内容が判定される。EMIを用いた場合もCGMSと同様のことが言える。

【0013】そこで番組の著作権を表す情報がcopy neverの場合に、一回だけ視聴を許可するという著作権者の意図通りに視聴者がデータを視聴でき、かつそのデータが放送された以後で時間帯を限定されずにそのデータを視聴者が視聴できるようにし、また番組の著作権の内容がcopy one generationの場合に一度記録した記録媒体から別の記録媒体へデータの移動を行うことが出来る記録再生装置が特願平10-312596で開示されている。

【0014】VCRなどの通常の記録再生装置は、著作権の内容がcopy neverの場合はデータを記録することは出来ない。ところが特願平10-312596で開示されている記録再生装置は、著作権の内容がcopy neverであるデータを記録することが出来る。ただし記録されたデータを再生する場合に制限をつける。すなわちそのデータを一回に限り再生できるようにするのである。

【0015】一回に限り再生する機能を実現するために、この記録再生装置は以下のような処理を行っている。すなわちデータが再生されたかどうかを示す情報である再生情報をデータと対にして記録しておき、データが再生された後、再生されたデータの部分の再生情報を未再生から再生済みに設定する。あるいはデータの再生中に再生が完了したデータからブロック単位に再生情報を再生済みに設定していく。そして再生情報が未再生の部分のみ再生し、再生情報が再生済みに設定されている場合はその部分のデータは再生しないようにするという処理を行っている。

【0016】あるいは一回限り再生する機能を実現するための別の方法として、この記録再生装置は以下の処理を行っている。すなわちデータが再生された後に、再生されたデータを記録媒体から消去する。あるいは、データの再生中に再生済みとなったデータの部分を記録媒体から消去するといった処理を行っている。

【0017】あるいは、さらに別の方法として、データ伝送時に施される暗号化とは別にデータを記録媒体に記録する際に暗号化を施し、再生するときはこの暗号化を解く。記録用の暗号に対する復号化の鍵は時間とともに

ランダムに変化し、この鍵をデータと対にして記録媒体に記録する。そしてデータの再生が完了したらこの鍵を記録媒体から消去することによってデータを一回しか再生出来ないようにする。あるいはデータの再生中に再生が完了したデータの部分の鍵を逐次消去することによってデータを一回しか再生出来ないようにするという処理を行っている。

【0018】またこの記録再生装置は、著作権の内容がcopy one generationの場合にも、copy neverと同様の処理によりそのデータを一回だけ再生する機能を提供している。ただしcopy one generationの場合、通常の記録再生装置は、著作権の内容がEMIである時は、EMIをno more copyに代えて出力し、CGMSである時は、CGMSをcopy neverに代えて出力する。これに対してこの記録再生装置は、著作権の内容を代えずにcopy one generationのまま一回に限り再生する。このようにすることによってcopy one generationのデータがある記録媒体から別の記録媒体へ移動することが可能になる。

【0019】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】しかしながら、IEEE1394バスには複数台の様々な装置が接続され互いにデータをやり取りする。このような記録再生装置が他の装置と著作権主張されたデータをやりとりする場合、著作権者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ないという課題がある。

【0020】例えば、著作権の内容がcopy neverのデータをこの記録再生装置が記録した後、さらにこの記録再生装置と同等の機能を持つ複数台の装置が同時にこの記録再生装置からデータを取得し、記録する場合は生じる。そうするとcopy neverのデータが複数台の装置に記録されてしまい、このデータを複数回視聴することが出来ることになり、一回だけ視聴することを許可するという著作権者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ない。また、著作権の内容がcopy neverのデータをこの記録再生装置が記録した後、さらにモニタとこの記録再生装置と同等の機能を持つ装置とが、データを取得する場合は生じる。そうすると、モニタで一回このデータを視聴した後、さらに記録再生装置が一回だけこのデータを再生し、もう一回視聴することが出来ることになり、一回だけ視聴することを許可するという著作権者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ない。またSTBなど放送波を受信して、その受信データを他の機器に対して送信する機能を持つ送信装置に対して、複数台の前記記録再生装置が接続されている場合、著作権の内容がcopy neverのデータを前記送信装置から送ると、複数台の前記記録再生装置が記録してしまい、このデータを複数回視聴することが出来るこ

とになり、一回だけ視聴することを許すという著作者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ない。

【0021】また前記送信装置には、アナログ端子が設けられ、このアナログ端子にアナログモニタが接続され、放送局から送られてくる映像音声データを視聴出来るようになっているものがある。このような装置がデータを出力する時にこの記録再生装置が存在している場合に著作者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ないという課題がある。

【0022】例えばこのような装置が、著作権のあるデータをこの記録再生装置が接続されている I E E E 1 3 9 4 バスに出力した場合、アナログモニタで一旦視聴された後、I E E E 1 3 9 4 バスに接続されているこの記録再生装置に記録されるので、2 回視聴することが出来る。従って一回だけ視聴することを許可するという著作者の意図が守られない。

【0023】このように、従来の著作権主張されているデータを著作権の内容を変えずに一回だけ再生する装置は、上述したような種々の課題を含んでいる。本願ではこれらの課題を解決した装置をキャッシュ装置と呼ぶことにする。

【0024】本発明は、著作権主張されているデータを著作権の内容を変えずに一回だけ再生する装置を含み、複数台の装置が接続されている場合、著作者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ないという課題と、モニタ用端子にモニタが接続されている時にも、著作権主張されているデータをこの装置が出力する場合に著作者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来ないという課題を考慮し、著作権主張されているデータに対して著作者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来、なおかつデータが放送された時間帯とは別の任意の時間帯にデータを視聴することが出来、さらにモニタ用端子が設けられモニタが接続されている場合にもデータが著作権主張されている時には著作者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来るキャッシュ装置、送信装置及びプログラム記録媒体を提供することを目的とするものである。

【0025】

【課題を解決するための手段】上述した課題を解決するために第 1 の本発明は（請求項 1 に対応）は、データを記録する記録手段と、前記データが著作権主張されている場合、前記記録手段により記録された前記データの著作権主張の内容を変えずに前記データを 1 回だけ再生する再生手段とを備え、複数の相手先装置に接続されたキャッシュ装置であって、接続された前記相手先装置のうち、前記再生手段が再生したデータを、いずれの相手先の装置に著作権の内容に応じて利用出来るようにするかを選択する送信選択手段とを備えたことを特徴とするキャッシュ装置である。

【0026】また第 2 の本発明（請求項 2 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、著作権主張されたデータを送る場

合、前記相手先の装置のうち、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台以上存在する場合は、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置の一台のみに、または前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置を除いて、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有しない装置全部に著作権の内容に応じて前記データを利用出来るようにし、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台も存在しない場合は、前記相手先装置の全部に著作権の内容に応じて前記データを利用出来るようにすることを特徴とする第 1 の発明に記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0027】また第 3 の本発明（請求項 3 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、暗号化された著作権主張されたデータを復号化するための鍵を前記相手先の装置に渡すことによって前記相手先の装置を選択することを特徴とする第 1 または第 2 の発明に記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0028】また第 4 の本発明（請求項 4 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、接続されている前記相手先の装置に予めデータを復号化するための鍵を配布しておき、いずれの鍵で著作権主張されたデータを暗号化するかによって、前記相手先の装置を選択することを特徴とする第 1 または第 2 の発明に記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0029】また第 5 の本発明（請求項 5 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、前記鍵を前記相手先の装置に渡す前に前記相手先の装置と認証を行い、認証に成功した場合のみ前記鍵を渡すことを特徴とする第 3 または第 4 の発明に記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0030】また第 6 の本発明（請求項 6 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有しない前記相手先の装置が一台も受信していないときは、前記キャッシュ装置を探し出して、前記キャッシュ装置に前記鍵を受け取るための認証要求を出すように命じることを特徴とする第 5 の発明に記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0031】また第 7 の本発明（請求項 7 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、前記鍵を前記相手先の装置に渡す際に、前記相手先の装置との認証の際に使用した一時的な鍵で前記鍵を暗号化して前記相手先の装置に渡すことを特徴とする第 5 の発明に記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0032】また第 8 の本発明（請求項 8 に対応）は、前記送信選択手段は、前記データが著作権主張されていない（copy free）場合、前記データを暗号化しないことを特徴とする第 1 ～ 7 の発明のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0033】また第 9 の本発明（請求項 9 に対応）は、前記著作権の内容とは、1 回だけ視聴することを許可する複製禁止（copy never）、または 1 回だけ複製することを許可する（copy one generation）、またはこれ以上の複製は許可しない

(no more copy)であることを特徴とする第1～8の発明のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0034】また第10の本発明(請求項10に対応)は、前記接続された相手先装置のうち、一台は本キャッシュ装置に直接接続されているモニタであることを特徴とする第1～9の発明のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置である。

【0035】また第11の本発明(請求項11に対応)は、データを出力する出力手段とを備え、複数の相手先装置に接続された送信装置であって、接続された前記相手先装置のうち、前記出力手段が出力したデータを、いずれの相手先の装置に著作権の内容に応じて利用出来るようにするかを選択する送信選択手段とを備え、前記相手先装置の中に、第1～10の発明のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置を一台以上含むかもしくは一台も含まないことを特徴とする送信装置である。

【0036】また第12の本発明(請求項12に対応)は、前記送信選択手段は、著作権主張されたデータを送る場合、前記相手先の装置のうち、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台以上存在する場合は、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置の一台のみに、または前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置を除いて、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有しない装置全部に著作権の内容に応じて前記データを利用出来るようにし、前記キャッシュ装置の機能を有する装置が一台も存在しない場合は、前記相手先装置の全部に著作権の内容に応じて前記データを利用出来るようにすることを特徴とする第11の発明に記載の送信装置である。

【0037】また第13の本発明(請求項13に対応)は、データをアナログ出力するアナログ出力手段と、前記データをデジタル出力するデジタル出力手段とを備え、前記デジタル出力手段が著作権主張されたデータをデジタル出力するとき、前記アナログ出力手段のアナログ出力を無効にすることを特徴とする送信装置である。

【0038】また第14の本発明(請求項14に対応)は、データを記録する記録手段と、前記データが著作権主張されている場合、前記著作権の内容を変えずに前記データを1回だけ再生する再生手段とを備えた記録再生装置に対して、前記デジタル出力手段が著作権主張されたデータをデジタル出力するとき、前記アナログ出力手段のアナログ出力を無効にすることを特徴とする第14の発明に記載の送信装置である。

【0039】また第15の本発明(請求項15に対応)は、前記接続された相手先装置のうち、一台は本送信装置に直接接続されているモニタであることを特徴とする第11または12の発明に記載の送信装置である。

【0040】また第16の本発明(請求項16に対応)は、前記著作権の内容とは、1回だけ視聴することを許可する複製禁止(copy never)、1回だけ複

製することを許可する(copy one generation)、これ以上の複製は許可しない(no more copy)のいずれかであることを特徴とする第11～15の発明のいずれかに記載の送信装置である。

【0041】また第17の本発明(請求項17に対応)は、第1～16の発明のいずれかに記載のキャッシュ装置または送信装置の各構成要素の一部または全部の機能をコンピュータに実行させるためのプログラムを格納していることを特徴とするプログラム記録媒体である。

【0042】

【発明の実施の形態】以下に本発明の実施の形態について図面を参照して説明する。

【0043】(第1の実施の形態)まずキャッシュ装置、非キャッシュ装置、送信装置の概念について図7、図8を参照して説明する。これらの概念は、後述する第2～7の実施の形態で共通して用いられる。

【0044】図8においてデジタルバス54は、例えばIEEE1394-1995に記述されているIEEE standard for High performance Serial Busであり(以下IEEE1394バスと称す)、IEEE1394バスなどの各装置間でコマンドとデータのやり取りが出来るバスである。デジタルバス54にはSTB55、TVモニタ56、ハードディスク装置57などが接続されている。放送局から送られてくるデータをSTB55が受信し、そのデータをデジタルバス54に送信し、TVモニタ56は、デジタルバス54に送られたデータをモニタし、またハードディスク装置57は、デジタルバス54に送られたデータを記録し、また記録されているデータを再生して、デジタルバス54に送信する。本実施の形態では最初にこのような種々の装置をキャッシュ装置、非キャッシュ装置、送信装置として分類することにする。

【0045】図7において、デジタルバス54は、IEEE1394バスであり、コマンドとデータのやり取りが出来、各装置が接続されているものである。非キャッシュ装置50、51とキャッシュ装置52、53と送信装置49などがデジタルバス54に接続されている。

【0046】まず非キャッシュ装置50または51は、例えばテレビモニタ56などのようにデータの著作権の内容に応じて通常の処理を行うものである。すなわち、データの著作権の内容であるEMIの値に応じてデータの処理を行うものである。テレビモニタ56の場合は、EMIがcopy never、copy one generation、no more copyのいずれの場合であってもデータをモニタする。また非キャッシュ装置50または51がハードディスク装置やVCRなどの記録再生を行う装置である場合は、EMIがcopy never、no more copyの時はデータを記録しない。またEMIがcopy one ge

nerationの時は、そのデータを記録し、再生時にはEMIをcopy one generationからno more copyに変更して出力する。また放送局から送られてくるデータがcopy neverの場合に、非キャッシュ装置52または53は、記録再生を行う装置であってもそのデータを記録しないので、放送時間帯にのみその番組を視聴することが出来る。このように非キャッシュ装置50または51はデータの著作権の内容に応じてデータの処理を行う装置であって、データをモニタする装置と、著作権の内容によって記録再生を行う装置とに大別することが出来る。

【0047】次にキャッシュ装置52または53は、EMIがcopy neverまたはno more copyのデータを記録することが出来、一回だけそのデータを再生し、二回以上は再生しない装置である。このようにすることによって著作者の意図を守ったまま視聴者がそのデータを視聴したい任意の時間帯に視聴することが出来る。また、EMIがcopy one generationのデータについても、記録することが出来、一回に限り再生可能とし、再生時にはEMIをcopy one generationのままにして出力する。このようにすることによって著作者の意図を守ったまま視聴者がデータを非キャッシュ装置50または51に記録するまで、一時的にデータを保持することが出来るので、視聴者は、データを記録する装置を十分検討してから視聴者の好きな時間に非キャッシュ装置52または53に記録することが出来る。

【0048】また、送信装置49は図8のSTB55などのようにデジタルバス54からデータを受け取ることはしないが、放送局など他のところからデータを入手し、デジタルバス54にデータを送信する装置である。

【0049】また、以上の説明では著作権の内容としてEMIに基づいて説明したが、キャッシュ装置や非キャッシュ装置がトランスポートストリームデコーダを有する場合にはCGMSにより著作権の内容に従ってデータが処理される。またEMI及びCGMSでcopy freeの場合は著作権主張されたデータではないので、そのデータを処理する際の制限はない。

【0050】キャッシュ装置、非キャッシュ装置、送信装置の概念はこのようになる。

【0051】発明が解決しようとする課題で説明したところから明らかなようにキャッシュ装置50または51がデジタルバス54に接続されている状況下にあるのは、著作権主張されたデータの著作権の内容を守ることが出来ない。そこで本実施の形態では、以下にキャッシュ装置50または51が接続されている状況であっても、データの著作権の内容を守ることが出来ることを説明する。

【0052】まず(1)キャッシュ装置52が、著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信する場合を

説明し、次に(2)送信装置49が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信する場合を説明し、最後に(3)非キャッシュ装置50が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信する場合を説明する。

【0053】(1)キャッシュ装置52が、著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信する場合の説明
キャッシュ装置52が、著作権主張されたデータを1回だけ再生すると、そのデータは、デジタルバス54に送信される。このデータを他のキャッシュ装置53と同時に非キャッシュ装置50または51が同時に利用すると、著作権の内容を守ることが出来ない。そこで、著作権の内容を守ることが出来るように次のような規則を設ける。

【0054】すなわち、著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54から受信し、著作権の内容に応じて利用する装置を、キャッシュ装置52が選別する。

【0055】選別の仕方は、デジタルバス54にキャッシュ装置52以外のキャッシュ装置が接続されている場合は、キャッシュ装置のうちの一台のみが著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにし、それ以外のキャッシュ装置と非キャッシュ装置はデータを利用出来ないようにする。あるいは、非キャッシュ装置全部に著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにし、キャッシュ装置にはデータを利用出来ないようにする。

【0056】また、デジタルバス54にキャッシュ装置52以外のキャッシュ装置が接続されていない場合は、デジタルバス54に接続している装置全部に著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにする。

【0057】またキャッシュ装置52が再生しながら同時に記録も可能な機器である場合に、キャッシュ装置52自らが出力する著作権主張されたデータを、キャッシュ装置52以外の一台のキャッシュ装置が利用し記録する際は、キャッシュ装置52は自らが出力するデータを記録出来ないようにする。すなわち記録を許可するキャッシュ装置はデータを送出しているキャッシュ装置52自らも含めて一台のみとする。

【0058】データを利用出来るようになったキャッシュ装置は、そのデータを記録し、一回だけ再生する。このキャッシュ装置が、キャッシュ装置53であるとする
とキャッシュ装置53が再び一回だけデータを再生する際の動作はキャッシュ装置52がデータを再生する場合と同一である。

(2)送信装置49が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信する場合の説明
送信装置49は、著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信する。このデータをキャッシュ装置52、53及び非キャッシュ装置50、51が同時に利用すると、著作権の内容を守ることが出来ない。そこで、著作権の内容を守ることが出来るように次の規則を設ける。

【0059】すなわち、著作権主張されたデータをデジ

タルバス 54 から受信し、著作権の内容に応じて利用する装置を、送信装置 52 が選別する。

【0060】選別の仕方は、デジタルバス 54 にキャッシュ装置 52 または 53 など一台以上のキャッシュ装置が接続されている場合は、キャッシュ装置のうちの一のみが著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにし、それ以外のキャッシュ装置と非キャッシュ装置はデータを利用出来ないようにする。あるいは、非キャッシュ装置全部に著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにし、キャッシュ装置はデータを利用出来ないようにする。

【0061】また、デジタルバス 54 にキャッシュ装置 52、53 などのキャッシュ装置が接続されていない場合は、デジタルバス 54 に接続している装置全部に著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにする。

【0062】送信装置 49 が送信しながら IEEE 1394 バスからのストリームを同時に受信し、前記受信したストリームのモニタ出力も可能な機器である場合、送信装置 49 自らが出力する著作権主張されたデータは送信装置 49 以外の 1 台のキャッシュ装置が利用し記録する際、送信装置 49 は自らが出力するデータを受信出来ないようにする。すなわち送信装置に非キャッシュ装置の機能がある場合は、その機能の部分は、1 台のキャッシュ装置と見なして処理する。

【0063】また送信装置 49 がデジタルバス 54 に送信しながら同時にそのデータをモニタ出力する機能がある場合、送信装置 49 が出力する著作権主張されたデータを 1 台のキャッシュ装置が利用し記録する際、前記モニタ出力を無効にする。

【0064】データを利用出来るようになったキャッシュ装置は、そのデータを記録し、一回だけ再生する。このキャッシュ装置が、キャッシュ装置 52 であるとする場合、キャッシュ装置 52 が再び一回だけデータを再生する際の動作は「(1) キャッシュ装置 52 が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信する場合の説明」と同一の動作をする。

【0065】(3) 非キャッシュ装置 50 が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信する場合の説明
非キャッシュ装置 50 は、著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信する。このデータをキャッシュ装置 52、53 及び非キャッシュ装置 50、51 が同時に利用すると、著作権の内容を守ることが出来ない。そこで、著作権の内容を守ることが出来るように次の規則を設ける。

【0066】すなわち、著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 から受信し、著作権の内容に応じて利用出来る装置を、選別出来るような仕組みを予め作成しておく。これには 2 通りの方法がある。

【0067】まず第 1 の方法は、キャッシュ装置 52、53 と非キャッシュ装置 50、51 とは別の認証または

別の種類の鍵をサポートするようにする。すなわち非キャッシュ装置 50 からデータを受け取るために認証要求を出して認証を行う装置が非キャッシュ装置 51 の場合は認証が成功するように予め認証の方法を決めておく。また非キャッシュ装置 50 からデータを受け取るために認証要求をだして認証を行う装置がキャッシュ装置 52 または 53 の場合は認証が失敗するように予め認証の方法を決めておく。ただしキャッシュ装置から非キャッシュ装置への送信における認証は、「(1) キャッシュ装置が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に出力する場合」で説明したように実施する必要があるため、この場合の認証は成功するように認証の方法を決めておく。このように認証方法を決定すると、非キャッシュ装置 50 から著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信した場合、このデータを著作権の内容に応じて利用できるのは非キャッシュ装置 50 または 51 に限定されるので、著作権の内容を守ることが出来る。データを受信した非キャッシュ装置は記録再生が可能な装置であれば、本説明である「(3) 非キャッシュ装置 50 が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信する場合」の冒頭からの非キャッシュ装置 50 と同一の動作をする。

【0068】第 2 の方法は、キャッシュ装置 52 または 53 は、非キャッシュ装置 50 から著作権主張されたデータが送られてくる場合、非キャッシュ装置と同様の動作をするようにモードを切り換えるのである。モード切り換えの方法としては、キャッシュ装置はキャッシュ装置であることを認証されない限り、キャッシュ装置として動作するモードにならないようにしておく。例えばEMI が copy never のデータが非キャッシュ装置 50 から送られてきた場合、非キャッシュ装置 50 は、キャッシュ装置 52 または 53 をキャッシュ装置として認証する機能をサポートしていないため、非キャッシュ装置として識別される。そこでキャッシュ装置 52 または 53 は非キャッシュ装置としてのモードで動作することになる。そのため、キャッシュ装置 52 または 53 はそのデータを記録しない。このようにすると非キャッシュ装置 50 からデータが送られてくる場合も著作権を守ることが出来る。ただしこのようなキャッシュ装置の場合、非キャッシュモードで記録した copy one generation のデータをキャッシュモードで送信する場合、no more copy とする。なぜなら、もし非キャッシュモードで記録した copy one generation のデータをキャッシュモードにおいて copy one generation のまま送信した場合、例えば、1 台の非キャッシュ装置の先に n 台のキャッシュ装置があり、前記キャッシュ装置に各々 m 台のキャッシュ装置がつながっている時、n 台のキャッシュ装置が非キャッシュモードで動作した n 個の copy one generation のデータ

を記録した後、キャッシュモードにて copy one generation のまま $n \times m$ 個のキャッシュ装置がキャッシュモードとなれば、 $n \times m$ 個の copy one generation のデータが存在することになり、次々と複製の数を増やすことが出来てしまうからである。データを受信したキャッシュ装置は非キャッシュ装置として動作するので「(3) 非キャッシュ装置 50 が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信する場合」の非キャッシュ装置 50 の説明と同一の動作をする。

【0069】本実施の形態ではキャッシュ装置、非キャッシュ装置、送信装置の概念を説明した。またキャッシュ装置がデジタルバスに接続されている場合にも著作権主張されたデータの著作権を守ることが出来ることを示した。

【0070】(第2の実施の形態) 次に第2の実施の形態について図1を参照して説明する。

【0071】第1の実施の形態で説明ように、キャッシュ装置は、データを受け取る装置のうちいずれの装置に著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにするか装置を選択する。本実施の形態ではデータを利用する装置をデータを出力する装置が選択する際の具体例について説明する。

【0072】図1は、キャッシュ装置と送信装置に組み込まれ、データを利用する装置を選択する送信選択手段1のブロック図である。送信選択手段1は次のように構成される。

【0073】すなわち、モード記憶手段2は、データを著作権の内容に応じてキャッシュ装置に利用出来るようにする(以下キャッシュモードと呼ぶ)かそれとも非キャッシュ装置に利用出来るようにする(以下非キャッシュモードと呼ぶ)かの区別をモードとして記憶する手段である。受信デバイス候補決定手段3は、データを利用するために送信要求や認証要求があった装置や、非キャッシュ装置が受信状態にない場合に適当なキャッシュ装置を探し出し、データを利用する装置の候補を決定する手段である。受信デバイス判別手段4はデータを利用しようとしている装置がキャッシュ装置か、非キャッシュ装置かどうか認証を行うことにより判別する手段である。モード決定手段5はキャッシュモードか非キャッシュモードにするかのモードをデータを利用する装置の種類によって決定する手段である。通知手段は、現在キャッシュモードか非キャッシュモードであるかのモードを非キャッシュ装置11とキャッシュ装置12に通知する手段である。key生成&出力手段7は、キャッシュモードの場合は、キャッシュ装置のうちの一が、伝送用に暗号化されたデータを復号化するための鍵を生成し、その特定の一台に鍵を渡し、また非キャッシュモードの場合は、非キャッシュ装置全部に伝送用に暗号化されたデータを復号化するための鍵を生成し、鍵を渡す手段で

ある。暗号化手段8は、key生成&出力手段7で生成した鍵で著作権主張されているデータを暗号化してデジタルバス54に出力する手段である。認証手段9は、暗号化手段8によって暗号化されたデータを復号化するための鍵をキャッシュ装置または非キャッシュ装置に渡す際に認証を行う手段である。切替スイッチ10は、非キャッシュ装置またはキャッシュ装置のうちどの装置と認証を行うかを切り替えるスイッチである。

【0074】また送信選択手段1からのデータを利用する装置としては、非キャッシュ装置11とキャッシュ装置12がデジタルバス54に接続している。

【0075】次にこのような本実施の形態の動作を説明する。

【0076】まず送信選択手段1が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス54に送信するのに先だって、受信デバイス候補決定手段3は、受信装置の候補を決定する。非キャッシュ装置11やキャッシュ装置12などから送信要求や認証要求があると、送信要求や認証要求を出した装置を受信装置の候補とする。また一台も非キャッシュ装置が送信要求や認証要求を出さなかった場合は、受信デバイス候補決定手段3は、デジタルバス54に接続されている装置からキャッシュ装置を探し出して、そのキャッシュ装置に認証要求を発するように命じるコマンドを送る。またキャッシュ装置が1台も接続されていない場合、非キャッシュ装置のうちのどれか一台を選んで、その非キャッシュ装置に対して認証要求を発するよう命じるコマンドを送ってもよい。このようにして受信デバイス候補決定手段3は、受信デバイスの候補を決定する。キャッシュ装置を探し出すためには、例えばキャッシュ装置が否かを問い合わせるコマンドを発行すればよい。

【0077】次に受信デバイス判別手段4は、受信デバイス候補決定手段3で決定された候補の中から受信装置の種類を判定する。その判定のしかたは受信装置の候補がキャッシュ装置であるかどうかの認証を行う。候補である受信装置が受信デバイス判別手段4との認証に成功するとその受信装置は、キャッシュ装置であることが判別される。認証に失敗するとその受信装置は非キャッシュ装置であることが判別される。

【0078】次にモード決定手段5は、受信デバイス判別手段4で判定された受信装置の候補の種類に基づきキャッシュモードか非キャッシュモードかを決定する。さらにモードを決定したら、決定したモードをモード記憶手段2に記憶する。例えば、モード決定手段5でキャッシュモードに決定されたら、モード記憶手段2は、現在のモードとしてキャッシュモードを記憶する。さらに通知手段6は、モード決定手段5で決定されたモードを受信デバイス候補決定手段3で決定された受信装置の候補に現在のモードを通知する。例えば、キャッシュモードに決定されている場合は、モードがキャッシュモードで

あることを受信装置の候補すべてに通知する。著作権主張されたデータは暗号化手段 8 で暗号化されてデジタルバス 54 に出力される。さらにモード決定手段 5 はこの暗号化されたデータを復号化する鍵をどの受信装置の候補に送るかを決定する。

【0079】モード決定手段 5 がどの受信装置の候補を実際の受信装置として決定するか判断基準は以下に述べるいずれかの判断基準に従って決定すればよい。

【0080】すなわち第 1 の判断基準としては、一番最初に送信選択手段 1 にデータの送信要求を出した受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 2 の判断基準としては、予め視聴者が受信装置の優先順位付けをしており、この優先順位の高いものから実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 3 の判断基準としては、一番最後に送信選択手段 1 にデータの送信要求を出した受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 4 の判断基準としては、受信装置の候補のうち非キャッシュ装置よりキャッシュ装置の方を優先して実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 5 の判断基準としては、受信装置の候補の内キャッシュ装置より非キャッシュ装置を優先して実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 6 の判断基準としては、記録時間や同時記録チャンネル数などの装置の能力に基づいて実際の受信装置を判断することである。例えば記録時間が長くてかつ同時に記録できるチャンネル数の多いものを実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 7 の判断基準としては、装置の使用頻度に基づいて実際の受信装置を判断することである。例えば、最も頻繁に使用される受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。あるいは最も使用されていない受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。以上モード決定手段 5 がどの受信装置の候補を実際の受信装置として決定するか判断基準について述べた。

【0081】次に認証手段 9 はこの鍵を渡すために、鍵を渡すべき受信装置の候補と認証を行う。例えば非キャッシュ装置 11 に鍵を渡すことに決定されている場合は、非キャッシュ装置 11 と認証を行い、認証が成功すると key 生成 & 出力手段 7 が暗号化されたデータを復号化するための鍵を生成し、非キャッシュ装置 11 などのすべての非キャッシュ装置に送る。また鍵を渡す候補がキャッシュ装置の場合は、キャッシュ装置の候補のうちいずれか 1 台のキャッシュ装置のみに送る。ただしこの鍵は、認証手段 9 で受信装置との認証を行う際に用いられる一時的な鍵で予め暗号化してキャッシュ装置 12 など 1 台のキャッシュ装置に渡され、キャッシュ装置 12 の側でこの一時的な鍵で、データの復号化のための鍵を復号化して用いる。

【0082】キャッシュ装置がデータの復号化のための鍵を入手したら、デジタルバス 54 から送られてくるデータと鍵を記録する。

【0083】本実施の形態では、暗号化されたデータを

復号化するための鍵を送信選択手段 1 が選択した装置に渡すことによって著作権主張されたデータを利用できる装置を決定している。いずれの装置を選択するかについては第 1 の実施の形態で説明したのと同一である。

【0084】(第 3 の実施の形態) 次に第 3 の実施の形態について図 2 を参照して説明する。

【0085】第 1 の実施の形態で説明ように、キャッシュ装置は、データを受け取る装置のうちいずれの装置に著作権の内容に応じてデータを利用出来るようにするか装置を選択する。本実施の形態でもデータを利用する装置をデータを出力する装置が選択する際の具体例について説明する。

【0086】図 2 は、キャッシュ装置と送信装置に組み込まれ、データを利用する装置を選択する送信選択手段 1 のブロック図である。送信選択手段 1 は次のように構成される。

【0087】すなわち、受信デバイス候補決定手段 3 は、データを利用するために送信要求や認証要求があった装置や、非キャッシュ装置が受信状態にない場合に適当なキャッシュ装置を探し出し、データを利用する装置の候補を決定する手段である。キャッシュ装置を探し出すためには、例えばキャッシュ装置か否かを問い合わせるコマンドを発行すればよい。受信デバイスグループ化手段 13 は、受信装置のそれぞれの候補と認証を行うことによってグループ化する手段である。鍵生成手段 14 は、受信デバイスグループ化手段 13 によってグループ化された受信装置のそれぞれのグループ用に暗号化されたデータを復号化する鍵を生成する手段である。異なったグループには異なった鍵が生成される。送信要求検出手段 18 は、どのグループからの送信要求があるかを検出する手段である。送信グループ決定手段 17 は、送信要求検出手段 18 で検出した送信要求のあるグループと現在の送信グループとからどのグループの鍵で著作権主張された鍵を暗号化するかを決定する手段である。現在の送信グループ記憶手段 16 は、決定されたグループを記憶する手段である。Key 配布手段 15 は、鍵生成手段 14 で生成された鍵を各グループの装置に配布する手段である。認証手段 9 は、鍵生成手段 14 で生成された鍵を配布する際に鍵を受け取る要求を出している装置と認証を行い、そのとき生成された一時的な鍵でデータを復号化する鍵を暗号化して配布する手段である。切替スイッチ 10 は、どの装置と認証を行うかを切り替えるものである。

【0088】次にこのような本実施の形態の動作を説明する。

【0089】まず送信選択手段 1 が著作権主張されたデータをデジタルバス 54 に送信するのに先だって、受信デバイス候補決定手段 3 は、受信装置の候補を決定する。非キャッシュ装置やキャッシュ装置などから送信要求や認証要求があると、送信要求や認証要求を出した装

置を受信装置の候補とする。また一台も非キャッシュ装置が送信要求や認証要求を出さなかった場合は、受信デバイス候補決定手段 3 は、デジタルバス 54 に接続されている装置からキャッシュ装置を探しだして、そのキャッシュ装置に認証要求を発するように命じるコマンドを送る。またキャッシュ装置が 1 台も接続されていない場合、非キャッシュ装置のうちのどれか 1 台を選んで、その非キャッシュ装置に対して認証要求を発するように命じるコマンドを送ってもよい。このようにして受信デバイス候補決定手段 3 は、受信デバイスの候補を決定する。

【0090】次に受信デバイスグループ化手段 13 は、受信デバイス候補決定手段 3 で決定された候補の中から受信装置の種類を判定し、グループ化する。そのグループ化の仕方は受信装置の候補がキャッシュ装置であるかどうかの認証を行う。候補である受信装置が受信デバイスグループ化手段 13 との認証に成功するとその受信装置は、キャッシュ装置であることが判別される。認証に失敗するとその受信装置は非キャッシュ装置であることが判別される。さらにキャッシュ装置については一台の装置ごとに別のグループに分ける。また非キャッシュ装置は全部まとめて一つのグループにする。現在受信デバイスグループ化手段 13 では、A、B、C の 3 種類のグループに分けられている。A には非キャッシュグループの装置すべてが登録されている。また B にはキャッシュグループの一台の装置が登録されている。また C にもキャッシュグループの別の一台の装置が登録されている。

【0091】次に鍵生成手段 14 は、受信デバイスグループ化手段 13 でグループ化された各グループにデータを復号化するための鍵を生成する。この鍵はグループごとに異なった鍵である。すなわち、グループ A の鍵で暗号化されたデータをグループ B の鍵で復号化することは出来ない。

【0092】認証手段 9 は各グループに属する装置と認証を行い、認証に成功すると認証の際に用いられる一時的な鍵で、各グループごとに決められた鍵を暗号化し、Key 配布手段 15 は、そのグループの装置に配布する。このようにデータをデジタルバスに出力する前に受信デバイスの候補となる装置をグループ化しておき、各グループごとに異なった鍵を配布しておくことによつて、データを受信する装置の選択が可能になる。

【0093】送信要求手段 18 は、どのグループから送信要求があるかを検出し、これに基づいて送信グループ決定手段 17 はどのグループの鍵でデータを暗号化して送信するかを決定する。暗号化手段 8 は、決定されたグループの鍵を用いてデータを暗号化し、デジタルバス 54 へ出力する。前述したように、グループごとに鍵は異なっているので、決定されたグループのみデータを復号化することが出来る。

【0094】このようにして第 2 の実施の形態で説明し

たような装置の選択が可能になる。

【0095】最後に送信グループ決定手段 17 が、どのグループの鍵でデータを暗号化して送信するか判断基準について以下に述べる。

【0096】すなわち第 1 の判断基準としては、一番最初に送信選択手段 1 にデータの送信要求を出した受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 2 の判断基準としては、予め視聴者が受信装置の優先順位付けをしており、この優先順位の高いものから実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 3 の判断基準としては、一番最後に送信選択手段 1 にデータの送信要求を出した受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 4 の判断基準としては、受信装置の候補のうち非キャッシュ装置よりキャッシュ装置の方を優先して実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 5 の判断基準としては、受信装置の候補の内キャッシュ装置より非キャッシュ装置を優先して実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 6 の判断基準としては、記録時間や同時記録チャンネル数などの装置の能力に基づいて実際の受信装置を判断することである。例えば記録時間が長くてかつ同時に記録できるチャンネル数の多いものを実際の受信装置と判断することである。第 7 の判断基準としては、装置の使用頻度に基づいて実際の受信装置を判断することである。例えば、最も頻繁に使用される受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。あるいは最も使用されていない受信装置を実際の受信装置と判断することである。

【0097】以上で送信グループ決定手段 17 が、どのグループの鍵でデータを暗号化して送信するか判断基準について述べた。

【0098】なお、本実施の形態では、データを利用する相手先の装置を、データを復号化するための鍵を渡すことによって選択したが、これに加えて、データを利用する候補となっている相手先の装置に、データが利用できるか否かを予め通知することも出来る。このようにすれば、相手先の装置がデータを利用出来るか否かがわかるので送られてきたデータを復号化する処理をしなくてすむので、各装置にかかるの負荷を軽減することが出来る。

【0099】（第 4 の実施の形態）次に第 4 の実施の形態について図面を参照して説明する。

【0100】本実施の形態では、第 2 または第 3 の実施の形態で説明した送信選択手段 1 を実際の装置に組み込んだ例として STB について説明する。この STB は送信装置として機能する。

【0101】図 3 において、アンテナ 19 は、放送局から放送される放送波を受信する手段である。チューナ部 20 は、放送波による番組を選択し、トランスポートストリームを出力する手段である。トランスポートストリームデコーダ部 21 はトランスポートストリームをデコードし、CGMS を検出する手段である。EMI 付与

手段 22 は、検出された CGMS から EMI を生成し、付与する手段である。デジタル I/F 手段 23 は、デジタルバス 54 とデータやコマンドのやり取りを行う手段である。送信選択手段 1 は、著作権主張されたデータをキャッシュ装置や非キャッシュ装置のいずれに送るかを選択するものであり、第 2 または第 3 の実施の形態で説明したものいずれかと同一である。

【0102】次にこのような本実施の形態の動作を説明する。

【0103】放送局から、送信されてきた放送波には CGMS が埋め込まれている。この放送波を受信したチューナー部 20 は、番組を選択する。選択された番組は、ビットストリームとして送信選択手段 1 に渡される。同時にトランスポートストリームデコーダ部 21 にも渡され、デコードされる。デコードされる際に CGMS が検出され、EMI 付与手段 22 で CGMS から EMI が生成される。また送信選択手段 1 では、第 2 または第 3 の実施の形態で説明したのと同じの処理を行い、著作権主張されたデータの場合は、著作権の内容に応じてどの送信先の装置がデータを利用できるかを選択する。さらに著作権主張されているデータを暗号化し、デジタル I/F 手段 23 に出力する。この際 EMI 付与手段 22 で生成された EMI が付与される。

【0104】このように、送信選択手段 1 を STB に組み込むことによって、送信装置として、著作権の内容を守りながら、キャッシュ装置にデータを送ることによって、EMI が copy never の場合には放送時間帯以外の任意の時間帯に番組を視聴したり、また copy one generation の場合には、任意の時間にデータを移動することが出来るようになる。

【0105】（第 5 の実施の形態）次に第 5 の実施の形態について図 4 を用いて説明する。

【0106】本実施の形態では、非キャッシュ装置の例として TV モニタの例を説明する。

【0107】デジタル I/F 手段 27 はデジタルバス 54 からデータを受信し、コマンドをやり取りする手段である。EMI 検出手段 28 は、デジタル I/F 手段 27 から送られてきたデータから EMI を検出する手段である。認証・復号化手段 29 は、著作権主張されたデータを受信する際に、データを送信する装置と認証を行い、認証に成功すると、暗号化されているデータを復号化するための鍵を受け取り、データを復号化する手段である。トランスポートストリームデコーダ部 21 は復号化されたデータ（トランスポートストリーム）をデコードする手段で、多重化されているデータを分離する手段である。AV ストリームデコーダ部 24 は、圧縮されている MPEG データを伸張し、AV 同期を取りながら出力する手段である。多重化されているデータを分離する手段である。D/A 変換部 25 は、伸張された AV デジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換する手段である。表示装

置 30 はアナログ信号をディスプレイに表示する手段である。

【0108】次にこのような本実施の形態の動作を説明する。

【0109】まずはじめに、認証・復号化手段 29 がデータを受け取るための認証要求を発行し、データの送り側の装置と認証を行う。認証が成功すると認証の際に一時的にもちいた鍵で、データを復号化するための鍵が暗号化されて渡される。それと同時に EMI 検出手段 28 で EMI を検出する。EMI の値に応じて、認証・復号化手段 29 はデータを復号化する鍵を用いて、データを復号化するか否かを判定する。認証・復号化手段 29 がデータを復号化すると、そのデータはトランスポートストリームデコーダ部 21 に渡され、多重化されているデータを分離する。さらに AV ストリームデコーダ部 24 で MPEG データを伸張する。D/A 変換部 25 はデジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換し、表示モニタ 30 は、アナログ信号をモニタする。

【0110】このような通常の構成の TV モニタが、キャッシュ装置と非キャッシュ装置が存在する状況下でも非キャッシュ装置として、機能することが出来る。

【0111】（第 6 の実施の形態）次に第 6 の実施の形態について図 5、図 6 を参照して説明する。

【0112】本実施の形態では、キャッシュ装置として機能するハードディスク装置について説明する。

【0113】図 5 は本実施の形態のハードディスク装置の基本構成図である。

【0114】ハードディスク装置は、デジタル I/F 手段 31、ストリームコントロール手段 32、LBA アクセス手段 33、ハードディスクコントロール手段 34、アクチュエータ手段 35、ディスク媒体 36、ヘッド 37、スピンドルモータ手段 38 から構成される。

【0115】デジタル I/F 手段 31 は、IEEE 1394 バスであり、デジタルバス 54 とデータやコマンドのやり取りを行う手段である。デジタル I/F 手段 31 の AV データの転送は、アイソクロナス (Isynchronous) 方式と呼ばれる転送方式で行われ、転送されるデータのリアルタイム性を保証しながら転送処理が行える。転送されるデータとしては例えば MPEG トランスポートストリームや DV ストリームなどがある。またデジタル I/F 手段 31 の AV 機器のコントロールは、アシンクロナス (Asynchronous) 方式と呼ばれる非同期な転送方式で行われる。ストリームコントロール手段 32 は、ストリームのアクセスや認証処理を行う手段である。LBA アクセス手段 33 は、LBA (logical block address) を指定してディスク媒体へアクセスするためのハードディスク装置内部の I/F 手段である。ハードディスクコントロール手段 34 は、アクチュエータ手段 35、スピンドルモータ手段 38 を制御し、またヘッド 37 を経由して

ディスク媒体 36 に対して記録再生をするための信号処理を行う手段である。ヘッド 37 は、ディスク媒体 36 に対して信号を記録再生するための手段である。スピンドルモータ手段 38 は、ディスク媒体を一定の速度で回転させる手段である。アクチュエータ手段 35 は、ディスク媒体 36 の目的とする位置へヘッド 37 を位置決めするための手段である。

【0116】図 5 に示されているハードディスク装置のストリームコントロール手段 32 は、図 6 のように構成される。

【0117】すなわちストリームコントロール手段 32 は、EMI 検出手段 39、EMI 付与手段 44、EMI アクセス手段 40、EMI 判定手段 41、認証・復号化手段 42、無効データ出力手段 45、ストリームアクセス手段 48、再生情報管理手段 43、データブロックアクセス手段 47、切替スイッチ 46、送信選択手段 1 から構成される。

【0118】EMI 検出手段 39 は、デジタル I/F 手段 31 から入力したアイソクロナス・パケットデータ中のヘッダ部分から EMI を記述したフィールドを検出する手段である。EMI 付与手段 44 は、デジタル I/F 手段 31 へ出力するアイソクロナス・パケットデータ中のヘッダ部分に指示された EMI を付与する手段である。EMI アクセス手段 40 は、検出した EMI 情報を LBA アクセス手段 33 を経由して読み出し、さらに検出した EMI 情報を指定されたデータブロックに対応して記録再生する手段である。EMI 判定手段 41 は、EMI 情報から著作権主張されているかどうかとその種類を判定する手段である。認証・復号化手段 42 は、デジタル I/F 手段 31 を介して AV 機器間の認証を行い、またデジタル I/F 手段 31 から入力される AV データを復号化する手段である。データブロックアクセス手段 47 は、指定されたブロック番号のデータを LBA アクセス手段 33 を経由して記録または再生を行い、また現在どのブロック番号をアクセス中であることを EMI アクセス手段 40 と再生情報管理手段 43 に通知する手段である。ストリームアクセス手段 48 は、デジタル I/F 手段 31 から受信される所定のアクセス方式に従ってコマンドを実行するためにデータブロックアクセス手段 47 に記録または再生するブロック番号を指定し、また図 5 に示されているディスク媒体 36 のユーザ領域を先頭データブロックから最終データブロックまで 1 本のテープのように見立てて、再生、記録、停止等の指示に従い、ストリームが現在どのブロック位置にいるかを示すストリームポインタ管理を行い、またストリームポインタ管理情報を LBA アクセス手段 33 を経由してディスク媒体 36 に対して記録または読み出しを行う手段である。ここで、所定のアクセス方式とは、例えば AV/C Digital Interface Command Set VCR subunit Specific

cation version 2.0.1 に準拠した方式である。切替スイッチ 46 は、EMI 付与手段 44 を経由して、デジタル I/F 手段 31 に AV データを出力する際に、再生情報管理手段 43 の結果により、再生済みの場合には、スイッチを off にするかまたは無効データ出力手段 45 に切り替えて、ブルーバックや黒画面などの無効データを出力し、未再生の場合には、スイッチを認証・復号化手段 42 に切り替えて暗号化された AV データを出力する手段である。再生情報管理手段 43 は、指定されたデータブロックに対応した再生情報を記録、読み出し、また再生情報から再生済みかどうか判断する手段である。送信選択手段 1 は、第 2 の実施の形態または第 3 の実施の形態で説明したものと同一である。

【0119】次にこのような本実施の形態の動作について説明する。

【0120】まずハードディスク装置の記録動作について説明する。

【0121】AV データを送ってくるもとの装置として STB を考えることにする。この STB は本発明の送信装置で送信選択手段 1 を備えている。また、本ハードディスク装置に対して IEEE 1394 バス経由で、記録開始命令、記録停止命令等を送るコントローラが存在するが、コントローラとハードディスク装置とのコマンドのやりとりを記述することは、本実施の形態の本旨からそれるので、本実施の形態では記述を省略する。

【0122】まずはじめに、本ハードディスク装置が STB に認証・復号化手段 42 にて、認証要求を出す。これにより STB 側の送信選択手段 1 において、本ハードディスク装置が受信デバイス候補となる。次にハードディスク装置は、デジタル I/F 手段 31 から記録開始コマンドを受信すると、デジタル I/F 手段 31 は自分が欲しいチャンネル番号を確認して、該当するアイソクロナス・パケットデータを取り込む。EMI 検出手段 39 は、取り込まれたアイソクロナス・パケットデータのヘッダ部分に保持されている EMI 情報を検出する。EMI 判定手段 41 は、検出した EMI 情報から著作権主張されているかどうかとその内容を判定する。STB 側の送信選択手段 1 によって、本ハードディスク装置がキャッシュ装置として認識されて、さらに最終的に AV データを送信する特定の 1 台のキャッシュ装置として選ばれたとする。認証・復号化手段 42 は、デジタル I/F 手段 31 を介して、STB から送られてきた鍵を受け取る。ただし EMI が copy free のときは、認証・復号化手段 42 は STB からの鍵を受け取らない。この場合は AV データ自体が暗号化されない。EMI が copy never の場合と EMI が copy one generation の場合と EMI が no more copy の場合は認証・復号化手段 42 は、鍵を受け取る。

【0123】デジタルI/F手段31を介して、認証・復号化手段42は、AVデータのEMIがcopy freeでない場合、そのAVデータを復号化する。またEMIがcopy freeの場合、AVデータは暗号化されていないので、認証・復号化手段42は、AVデータを通過させる。ストリームアクセス手段48は、データブロックアクセス手段47にブロックxの記録を指示する。データブロックアクセス手段47は、EMIアクセス手段40に現在アクセス中のブロック番号(=x)を通知する。EMIアクセス手段40は、EMI検出手段39で検出されたEMI情報を、通知されたブロック番号に対応付けて記録する。本発明のハードディスク装置はキャッシュ装置として機能しているので、EMIがcopy one generationの場合はディスク媒体36にEMI情報を記録する際にEMIをno more copyに書き替えずに記録する。またデータブロックアクセス手段47は、再生情報管理手段43に現在アクセス中のブロック番号(=x)を通知する。再生情報管理手段43は、記録時には通知されたブロック番号(=x)に対応付けて、再生情報をテーブルにして記憶する。さらにデータが未再生であるという情報を再生情報に登録する。すなわちplay_flag=0で再生情報を初期化する。次に再生情報管理手段43は、LBAアクセス手段33を経由してディスク媒体36に再生情報を記録する。次にブロック番号を1だけ増加する。すなわちx=x+1とする。次にデジタルI/F手段31から別のコマンドの受信があるかどうか判定する。別のコマンドを受信していれば処理は終了する。そうでない場合は記録コマンドを受信してから処理を別のコマンドの受信があるまで繰り返し行う。以上がAVデータをディスク媒体36に記録する場合である。

【0124】次に、ハードディスク装置の再生動作について説明する。AVデータを受信する相手先装置がTVモニタの場合について説明する。また、ハードディスク装置に対して、再生開始命令、再生停止命令等を送るコントローラが存在するが、コントローラとハードディスク装置とのコマンドのやりとりを記述することは、本実施の形態の本旨からそれるので、本実施の形態では記述を省略する。

【0125】まずはじめにTVモニタが本ハードディスク装置に対して認証要求を出す。これにより本ハードディスク装置の送信選択手段1において、TVモニタが受信デバイスの候補となる。次に第2または第3の実施の形態で説明した送信選択手段1の動作によりTVモニタ(非キャッシュ装置)に対して認証し、鍵を渡す。次にハードディスク装置が再生開始コマンドを受信すると、ストリームアクセス手段48は、データブロックアクセス手段47にブロックxの再生を指示する。データブロックアクセス手段47は、EMIアクセス手段40と、

再生情報管理手段43に、現在アクセス中のブロック番号(=x)を通知する。同時にデータブロックアクセス手段47は、LBAアクセス手段33を介してディスク媒体36からAVデータを読み出す。EMIアクセス手段40は、通知されたブロック番号に対応するEMI情報をディスク媒体36から読み出す。読み出されたEMI情報はEMI判定手段41で判定され、その判定結果は、送信選択手段1と再生情報管理手段43と認証・復号化手段42に送られる。

【0126】EMI判定結果でEMIがcopy freeの場合は送信選択手段1はデータを暗号化せず、AVデータは暗号化されないで出力される。またEMIがcopy freeでない場合は送信選択手段1はデータを暗号化して出力する。再生情報管理手段43は、再生時には再生情報を更新し、読み出されたEMI情報の判定結果を調べる。

【0127】EMIがcopy freeでない場合、再生情報管理手段43は、AVデータが未再生であるか再生済みであるかを判定する。EMIがcopy neverであって、かつ再生済みである場合は、切替スイッチ46が無効データ出力手段45の側に切り替えられブルーバック画面や黒画面などの無効なデータが出力される。

【0128】次にブロック番号を1だけ増加する。すなわちx=x+1とする。次にデジタルI/F手段31から別のコマンドの受信があるかどうか判定する。別のコマンドを受信していれば処理は終了する。再生処理が終了したら、再生情報管理手段43で再生したブロックの初期値の番号から最終値の番号までの再生情報をアクセスし、再生情報を再生済みすなわちplay_flag=1に更新する。そうでない場合は再生コマンドを受信してから処理を別のコマンドの受信があるまで繰り返し行う。以上がAVデータを再生する場合である。

【0129】ハードディスク装置に記録されたAVデータのEMIがcopy freeでない場合に、再生情報管理手段43による判定で切替スイッチ46を切り替えることと、再生情報管理手段17で再生情報を管理することにより、copy freeでないAVデータを一回だけ再生することができる。

【0130】なお、本実施の形態の再生情報管理手段、EMIアクセス手段、データブロックアクセス手段は本発明の記録手段の例であり、本実施の形態のEMIアクセス手段、再生情報管理手段、データブロックアクセス手段、切替スイッチは本発明の記録手段の例である。

【0131】(第7の実施の形態)次に第7の実施の形態について図3を参照して説明する。

【0132】本実施の形態では、第4の実施の形態のS TBにアナログモニタが接続されている場合を説明する。

【0133】本実施の形態で、第4の実施の形態との相

違点を中心に説明する。

【0134】本発明の送信装置としてのSTBは第4の実施の形態の構成に加えて、AVストリームデコーダ部24、D/A変換部25を備え、アナログ端子からアナログモニタに接続され、STBで受信した番組をアナログモニタで視聴できるように構成されている。

【0135】AVストリームデコーダ部24は、トランスポートストリームデコーダ部21から出力されるMP EGデータを伸長する手段である。D/A変換部25は、伸長されたデジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換する手段である。

【0136】次にこのような本実施の形態の動作を説明する。

【0137】放送局から送られてくる放送波は送信選択手段1で相手先の機器を選択して著作権に応じてデータを利用できるようにすることは、第2及び第3の実施の形態で説明した。ところが、STBにはアナログモニタが接続されているため、データを常に視聴することが出来る。従ってアナログモニタで視聴しながらデータをデジタルバス54に出力した場合、著作権を守ることが出来ないという問題が生じる。

【0138】そこで、本実施の形態では、送信選択装置1がキャッシュ装置にデータを利用出来るようにしている場合には、切り替えスイッチ26をオフにしてアナログモニタにデータを出力しないようにした。あるいは切替スイッチ26を用いず、データをスクランブルした状態でアナログモニタに出力してもよい。

【0139】このようにするためには、送信選択手段1を構成するモード記憶手段2または現在の送信グループ記憶手段16で記憶されているモードもしくはグループを参照し、それがキャッシュ装置のものである場合には、上述したように切替スイッチをオフにするかデータにスクランブルをかけるかすればよい。

【0140】このようにすることによって、STBにモニタが接続されている場合にも著作権を守ることが出来る。

【0141】なお、本実施の形態では送信装置について説明したが、モニタが接続されているキャッシュ装置に対しても同様な処理を施すことによって著作権を守ったまま、データを出力することができる。

【0142】さらに、本実施の形態のデジタルI/F手段は本発明の出力手段の例であり、IEEE1394インターフェースであっても構わないし、その他の規格のインターフェースであっても構わない。

【0143】さらに、本実施の形態では主にEMIを用いて説明したがこれに限らずCGMSを用いることも可能であるし、EMIとCGMSを併用することも可能である。

【0144】さらに、本発明のキャッシュ装置は、本実施の形態におけるハードディスク装置に限らずVCR、

光ディスク装置、DVD-RAM装置など、要するに記録再生ができる装置もキャッシュ装置として使用することが出来る。ただしその場合は第6の実施の形態で説明したように、本発明の記録手段と再生手段と送信選択手段を備えている必要がある。

【0145】さらに、本発明のキャッシュ装置の構成例において、送信選択手段1以外の構成については、EMIやCGMSに対応して1回だけ再生する機能を実現できるものであればどのようなものであってもよい。そのいくつかの実施の形態は、例えば特願平10-312596で開示されている記録再生装置などがあり、これについては従来技術で簡単に紹介した。

【0146】さらに、本発明の送信装置またはキャッシュ装置において、copy neverとcopy one generation及びno more copyのAVデータを暗号化/復号化するための鍵は異なる鍵とすると安全性を高めることが出来る。またcopy neverとcopy one generation及びno more copyの鍵を渡す/得るための認証方法は異なる認証方法であってもよい。例えばcopy neverは公開鍵方式を用い、copy one generationとno more copyは共通鍵方式を用いることが出来る。このようにすればさらに安全性が向上する。

【0147】さらに、本発明の送信装置またはキャッシュ装置の各構成要素の機能を専用のハードウェアで実現しても構わないし、コンピュータのプログラムによってソフトウェア的に実現しても構わない。

【0148】さらに、本発明の送信装置またはキャッシュ装置の各構成要素の全部または一部の機能をコンピュータに実行させるためのプログラムを格納していることを特徴とするプログラム記録媒体も本発明に属する。

【0149】

【発明の効果】以上説明したところから明らかなように、著作権主張されているデータに対して著作権者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来、なおかつデータが放送された時間帯とは別の任意の時間帯にデータを視聴することが出来、さらにモニタ用端子が設けられモニタが接続されている場合にもデータが著作権主張されている時には著作権者の意図通りに著作権を守ることが出来るキャッシュ装置、送信装置及びプログラム記録媒体を提供することが出来る。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図1】本発明の第2の実施の形態における送信選択手段の構成を示すブロック図

【図2】本発明の第3の実施の形態における送信選択手段の構成を示すブロック図

【図3】本発明の第4及び第7の実施の形態における送信装置としてのSTBの構成を示すブロック図

【図4】本発明の第5の実施の形態における非キャッシ

ュ装置としてのTVモニタの構成を示すブロック図

【図5】本発明の第6の実施の形態におけるキャッシュ装置としてのハードディスク装置の基本構成を示すブロック図

【図6】本発明の第6の実施の形態におけるキャッシュ装置としてのハードディスク装置のストリームコントロール手段の構成を示すブロック図

【図7】本発明の第1の実施の形態におけるデジタルバスにキャッシュ装置と非キャッシュ装置が接続されている状態を示す図

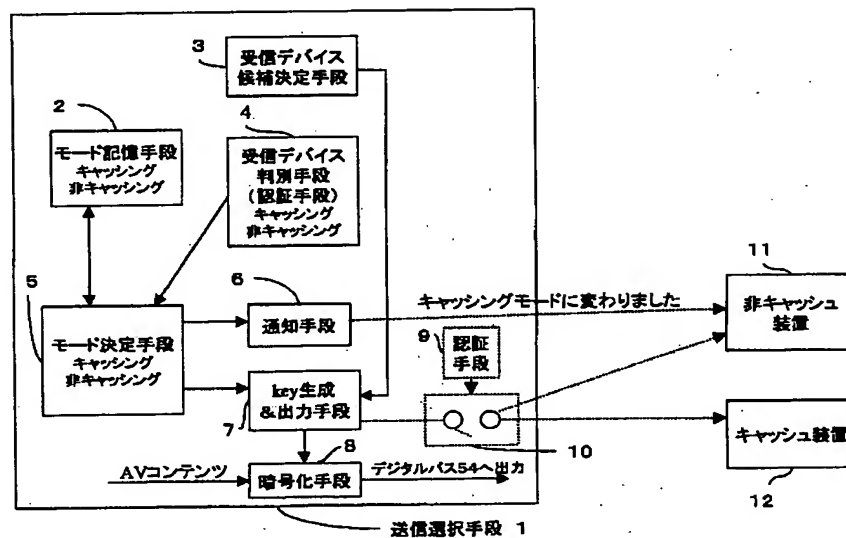
【図8】本発明の第1の実施の形態におけるデジタルバスに各装置が接続されていることを示すブロック図

【符号の説明】

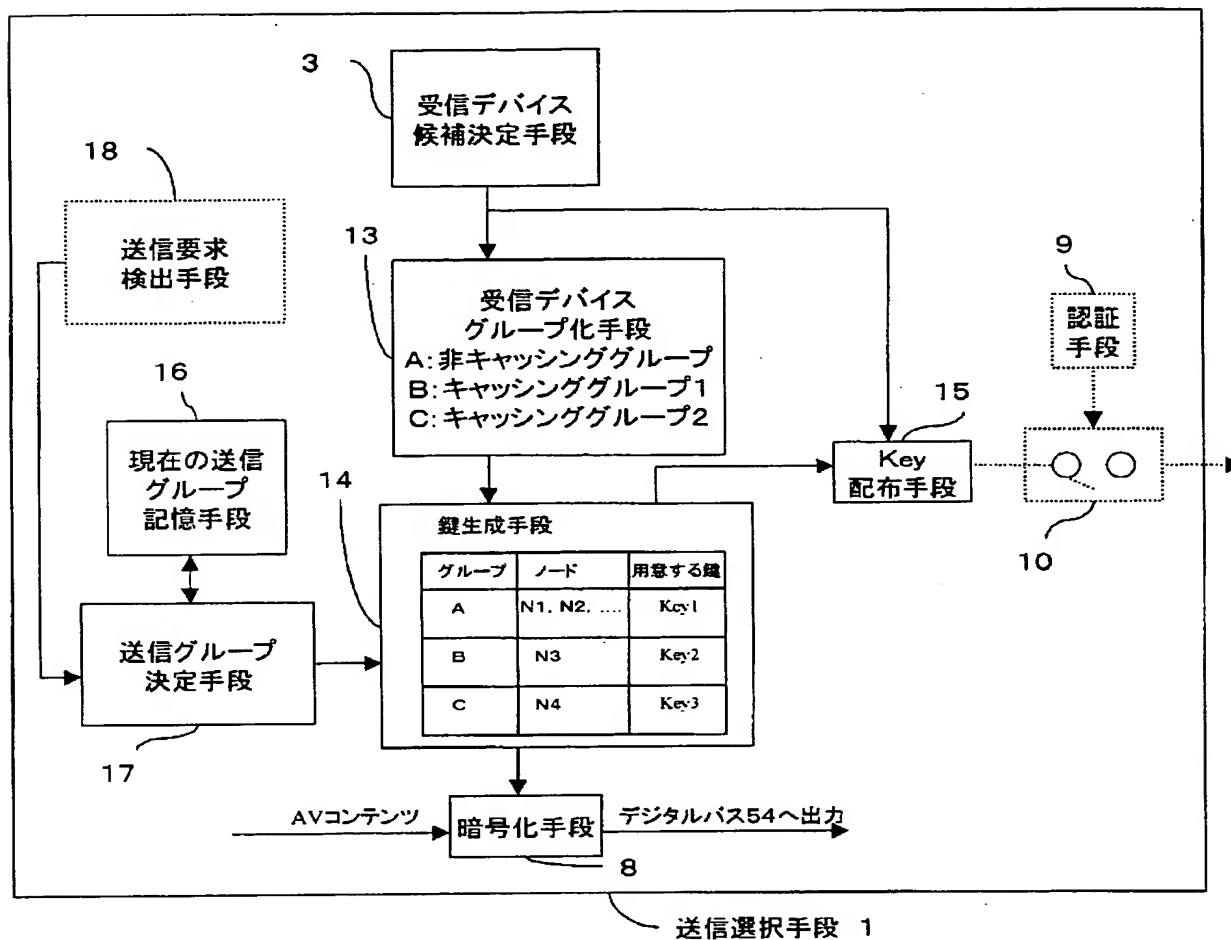
- 1 送信選択手段
- 2 モード記憶手段
- 3 受信デバイス候補決定手段
- 4 受信デバイス判別手段
- 5 モード決定手段
- 6 通知手段
- 7 key生成&出力手段
- 8 暗号化手段
- 9 認証手段

- 10 切替スイッチ
- 11 非キャッシュ装置
- 12 キャッシュ装置
- 13 受信デバイスグループ化手段
- 14 鍵生成手段
- 15 Key配布手段
- 16 現在の送信グループ記憶手段
- 17 送信グループ決定手段
- 18 送信要求検出手段
- 19 アンテナ
- 20 チューナー部
- 21 トラנסポートストリームデコーダ部
- 22 EMI付与手段
- 23 デジタルI/F手段
- 24 AVストリームデコーダ部
- 25 D/A変換部
- 26 切替スイッチ
- 27 デジタルI/F手段
- 28 EMI検出手段
- 29 認証・復号化手段
- 30 表示装置

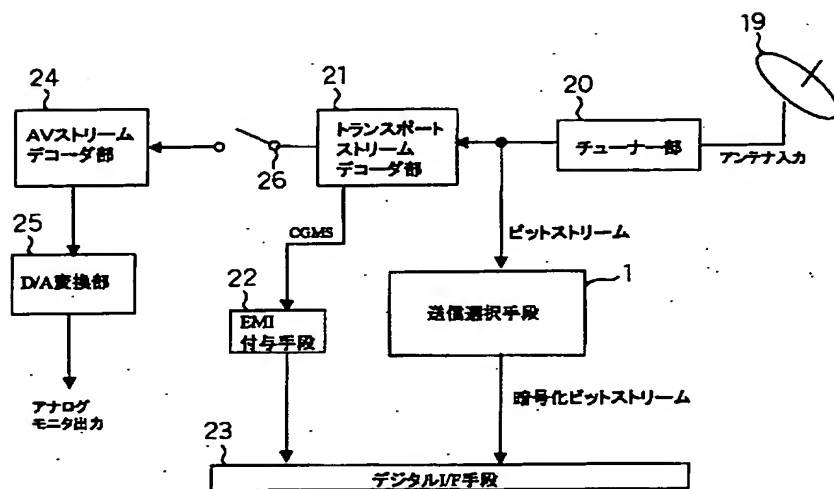
【図1】



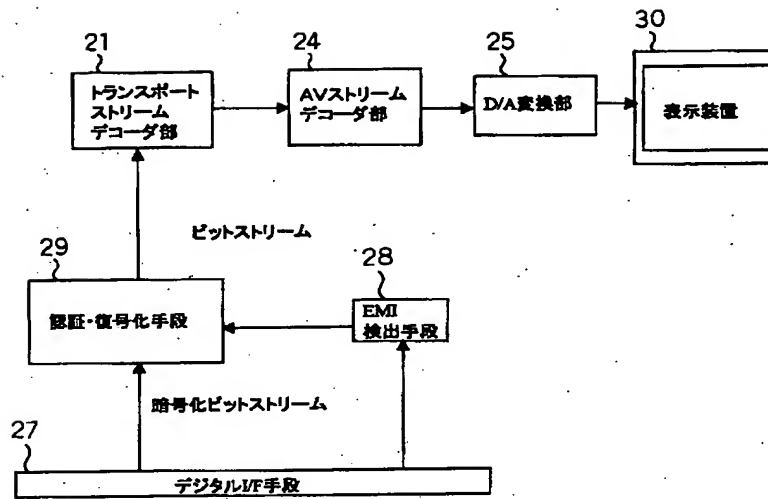
【図2】



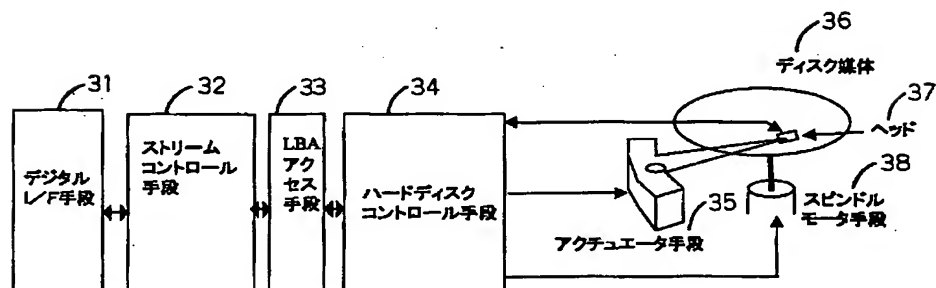
【図3】



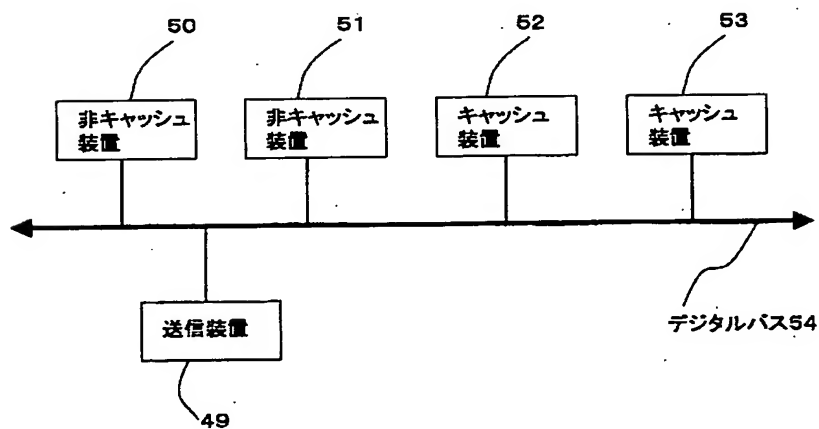
【図 4】



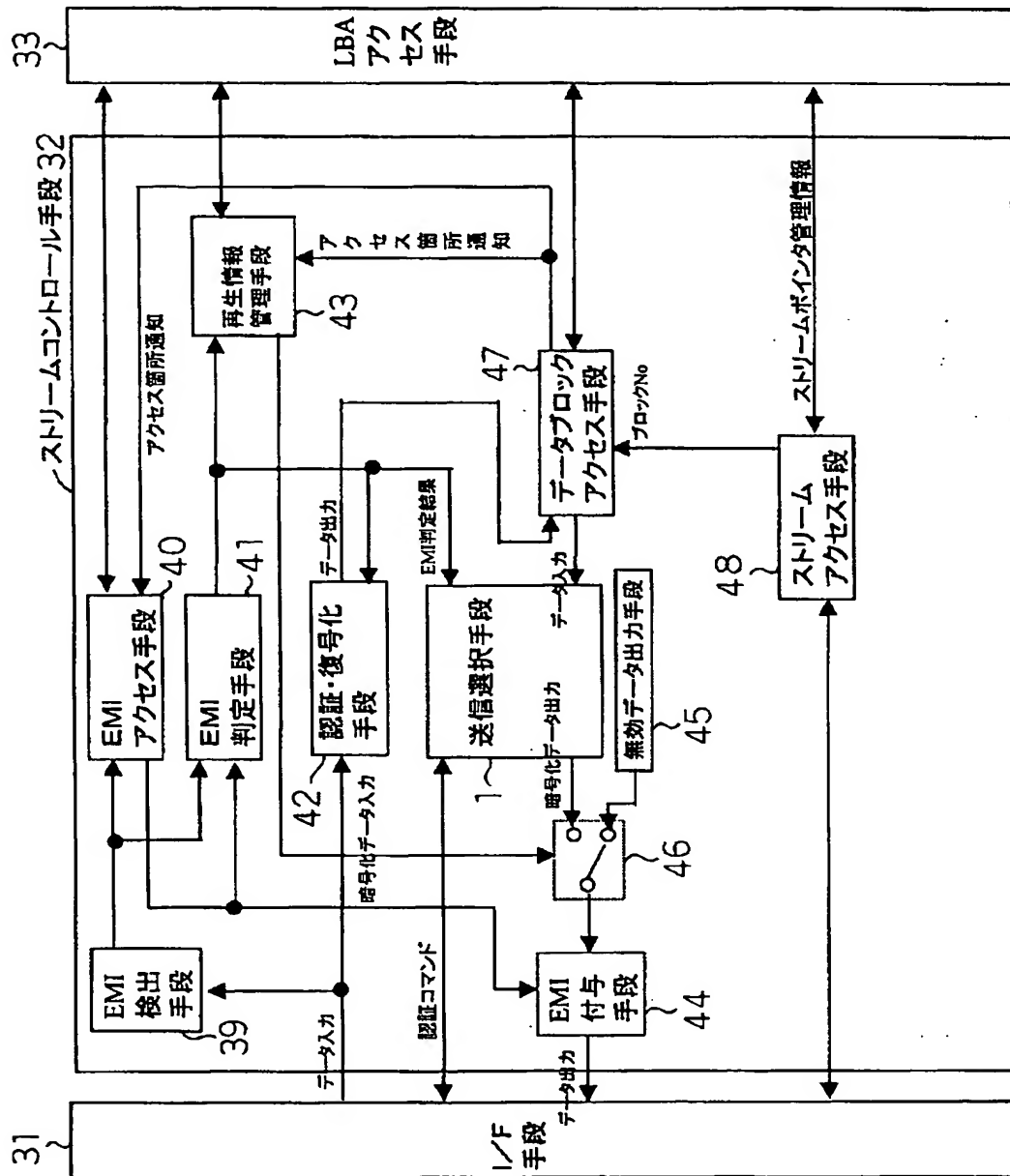
【図 5】



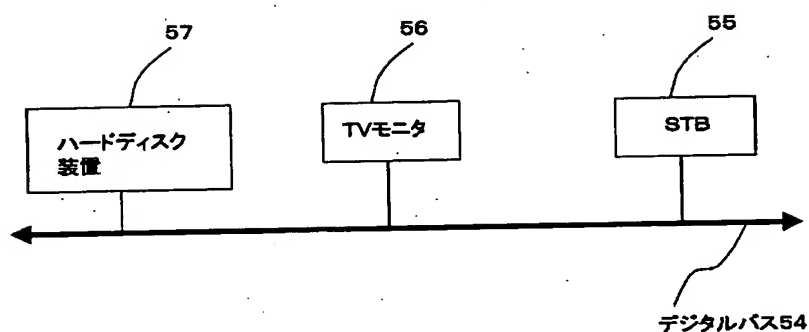
【図 7】



【図6】



【図 8】



フロントページの続き

- (72)発明者 武知 秀明
大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器
産業株式会社内
- (72)発明者 山田 正純
大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器
産業株式会社内
- (72)発明者 飯塚 裕之
大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器
産業株式会社内
- (72)発明者 後藤 昌一
大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器
産業株式会社内

Fターム(参考) 5B017 AA06 BA02 BA07 BB04



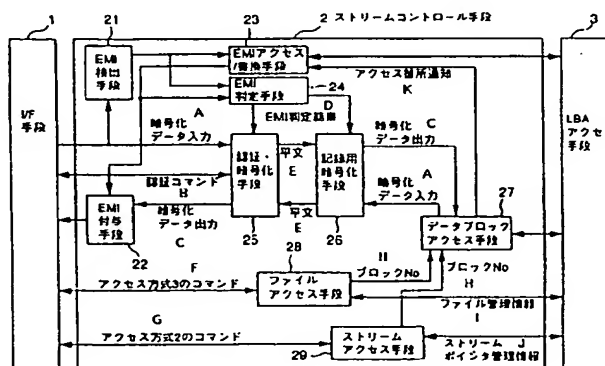
(51) 国際特許分類7 G11B 20/10		A1	(11) 国際公開番号 WO00/26910
			(43) 国際公開日 2000年5月11日(11.05.00)
(21) 国際出願番号 PCT/JP99/06000		山田正純(YAMADA, Masazumi)[JP/JP] 〒570-0011 大阪府守口市金田町6-24-10 Osaka, (JP)	
(22) 国際出願日 1999年10月29日(29.10.99)		飯塚裕之(HITSUKA, Hiroyuki)[JP/JP] 〒576-0033 大阪府交野市私市6-25-6 Osaka, (JP)	
(30) 優先権データ 特願平10/312595 1998年11月2日(02.11.98) JP 特願平10/312596 1998年11月2日(02.11.98) JP 特願平11/87007 1999年3月29日(29.03.99) JP		後藤昌一(GOTO, Shoichi)[JP/JP] 〒576-0021 大阪府交野市妙見坂5-4-204 Osaka, (JP)	
(71) 出願人 (米国を除くすべての指定国について) 松下電器産業株式会社 (MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD.) [JP/JP] 〒571-8501 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 Osaka, (JP)		(74) 代理人 弁理士 松田正道(MATSUDA, Masamichi) 〒532-0003 大阪府大阪市淀川区宮原5丁目1番3号 新大阪生島ビル Osaka, (JP)	
(72) 発明者 ; および (75) 発明者 / 出願人 (米国についてのみ) 久野良樹(KUNO, Yoshiki)[JP/JP] 〒570-0054 大阪府守口市大枝西町14-26-204 Osaka, (JP) 西村拓也(NISHIMURA, Takuya)[JP/JP] 〒545-0053 大阪府大阪市阿倍野区松崎町3-9-18-F Osaka, (JP) 武知秀明(TAKECHI, Hideaki)[JP/JP] 〒533-0004 大阪府大阪市東淀川区小松4丁目11-10-201 Osaka, (JP)		(81) 指定国 CN, US, 欧州特許 (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE)	
		添付公開書類 国際調査報告書	

(54) Title: RECORDING / REPRODUCING APPARATUS, PROGRAM RECORDED MEDIUM, RECORDED MEDIUM, CACHE DEVICE, AND TRANSMITTER

(54) 発明の名称 記録再生装置、プログラム記録媒体、記録媒体、キャッシュ装置及び送信装置

(57) Abstract

A recording / reproducing apparatus comprising input means for receiving packet data based on the IEEE 1394 and held in a header of a packet based on the IEEE 1394 and containing signal information (hereinafter referred to EMI) on signals representing AV data use license information and recording/reproducing means for recording/reproducing AV data and EMI contained in packet data received by the input means, wherein there are four types of EMI, the recording/reproducing means rewrites the EMI to information of which no more copy is allowed and records the AV data representative of permission that copying one generation is allowed.



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 ... 1/F MEANS | A ... ENCRYPTED DATA INPUT |
| 2 ... STREAM CONTROL MEANS | B ... AUTHENTICATION COMMAND |
| 3 ... LBA ACCESS MEANS | C ... ENCRYPTED DATA OUTPUT |
| 21 ... EMI DETECTING MEANS | D ... RESULT OF EMI JUDGMENT |
| 22 ... EMI IMPARTING MEANS | E ... PLAIN TEXT |
| 23 ... EMI ACCESS/REWRITE MEANS | F ... COMMAND BY ACCESS METHOD 3 |
| 24 ... EMI JUDGING MEANS | G ... COMMAND BY ACCESS METHOD 2 |
| 25 ... AUTHENTICATING/ENCRYPTING MEANS | H ... BLOCKS NO. |
| 26 ... ENCRYPTING MEANS FOR RECORDING | I ... FILE MANAGEMENT INFORMATION |
| 27 ... DATA BLOCK ACCESS MEANS | J ... STREAM POINTER MANAGEMENT INFORMATION |
| 28 ... FILE ACCESS MEANS | K ... ACCESSSED AREA NOTIFICATION |
| 29 ... STREAM ACCESS MEANS | |

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

503P1736W060



Europäisches Patentamt
European Patent Office
Office européen des brevets



(11) EP 1 045 389 A1

(12) **EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION**
published in accordance with Art. 158(3) EPC

- (43) Date of publication: 18.10.2000 Bulletin 2000/42
(21) Application number: 99951137.1
(22) Date of filing: 29.10.1999
(51) Int. Cl.⁷: G11B 20/10
(86) International application number: PCT/JP99/06000
(87) International publication number: WO 00/26910 (11.05.2000 Gazette 2000/19)

(84) Designated Contracting States:
AT BE CH CY DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU
MC NL PT SE

(30) Priority: 02.11.1998 JP 31259598
02.11.1998 JP 31259698
29.03.1999 JP 8700799

(71) Applicant:
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd.
Kadoma-shi, Osaka 571-8501 (JP)

(72) Inventors:
• KUNO, Yoshiki
Moriguchi-shi, Osaka 570-0054 (JP)
• NISHIMURA, Takuya
Osaka-shi, Osaka 545-0053 (JP)

• TAKECHI, Hideaki
Osaka-shi, Osaka 533-0004 (JP)
• YAMADA, Masazumi
Moriguchi-shi, Osaka 570-0011 (JP)
• IITSUKA, Hiroyuki
Katano-shi, Osaka 576-0033 (JP)
• GOTO, Shoichi
Katano-shi, Osaka 576-0021 (JP)

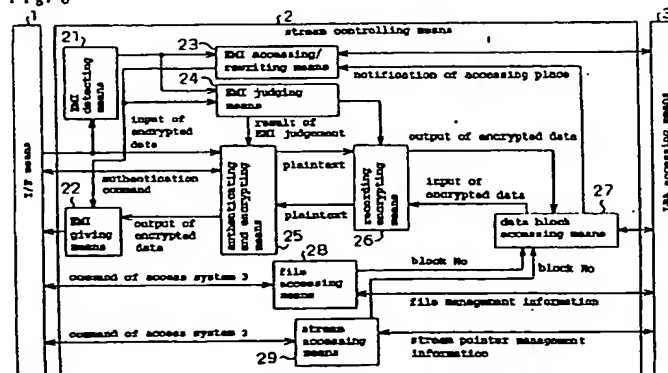
(74) Representative:
Grünecker, Kinkeldey,
Stockmair & Schwanhäusser
Anwaltssozietät
Maximilianstrasse 58
80538 München (DE)

(54) **RECORDING / REPRODUCING APPARATUS, PROGRAM RECORDED MEDIUM, RECORDED MEDIUM, CACHE DEVICE, AND TRANSMITTER**

(57) A recording and reproducing apparatus is characterized in that said apparatus has: inputting means for receiving a packet data which is based on IEEE 1394, and in which signal information for indicating copy right information of an AV data (hereinafter, referred to as EMI) is provided in a header of a packet according to IEEE 1394; and recording and reproducing means for recording and reproducing an AV data and the EMI

which are held in the packet data received by said inputting means. Four kinds of EMI are used, and, when an AV data indicating allowance "copy one generation" among them is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means performs recording while rewriting the EMI to EMI indicating "no more copy."

Fig. 3



EP 1 045 389 A1

Description

Technical Field

[0001] The present invention relates to a recording and reproducing apparatus in the case where EMI information of an AV data is added to the AV data, a recording and reproducing apparatus in the case where copy right information of an AV data is added to the AV data, and a caching apparatus which handles a copyrighted data in the case where plural apparatuses are connected, a transmitting apparatus, and a program recording medium.

Background Art

[0002] Demands for a home multimedia system and a home network are rapidly rising in the wave of digitization. In an office and a business system, needs for digitization and a multimedia system are rising at a higher degree than those in a home system. In such a situation, recently, attention is given to IEEE 1394-1995. This is a standard for a high speed serial bus which was standardized by IEEE in 1995 while focusing on a physical layer and a link layer, and also a hardware and software standard for data transfer of 100 Mbps, 200 Mbps, and 400 Mbps. IEEE 1394 has characteristic functions for plug and play and multimedia data transfer. Specifically, it is provided with isochronous data transfer in which a band for transferring data such as a video or audio data is ensured to enable real time transfer. Furthermore, a control program of a PC connected through an IEEE 1394 bus can simultaneously perform controls of video data of a digital camera or the like (switching of video data, and a control of the camera) by means of IEEE 1394 control commands (asynchronous data).

[0003] When a digital AV data flowing through IEEE 1394-1995 which is a standard as described above is to be recorded in a recording and reproducing apparatus, it is conventionally judged whether the data is an AV data which can be copied or not, based on a CGMS (Copy Generation Management System) which is embedded into a stream.

[0004] A CGMS exists in a transport stream which is sent from a broadcasting station. A CGMS is a 2-bit data. A CGMS takes the following values, and the meanings of the values are as follows.

[0005] Namely, when CGMS = 11, it means "copy never"; when CGMS = 10, it means "copy one generation"; and, when CGMS = 00, it means "copy free." There is no CGMS = 01. In the above, "copy never" means copy inhibit, and permits only viewing or listening of the AV data, "copy one generation" permits only a copy of one generation, or allows a copied AV data to be repeatedly viewed or listened any number of times, and "copy free" means that the data can be freely copied.

[0006] A DVC which records and reproduces a DV

stream among digital AV data flowing through IEEE 1394-1995 has a DV stream decoder, extracts a CGMS from a predetermined position of the stream, and judges whether a copy is permitted or not. If CGMS = 11 or "copy never," recording of the AV data is not performed. In an apparatus having a configuration in which no internal decoder is disposed, only recording and reproduction of a data are performed, and decoding of an AV data is committed to an external decoder, such as a DVHS, an HDD, or a DVD-RAM which records and reproduces an MPEG2 transport stream, a transport stream decoder circuit or the like is necessary for detecting a CGMS, and hence the hardware configuration is complicated.

[0007] In a digital broadcast stream using an MPEG2 transport stream, particularly, the place where a CGMS is to be embedded is varied depending on the service provider. In many cases, such a place is not made public. Even when a transport stream decoder circuit is provided, therefore, a CGMS cannot be sometimes detected.

[0008] On the other hand, when signal information for sending copy right information (hereinafter, referred to as EMI) is added into a header of an IEEE 1394 packet data, hardware such as a transport stream decoder circuit is not necessary.

[0009] EMI takes the following values. Namely, when EMI = 11, it means "copy-never"; when EMI = 10, it means "copy one generation"; and, when EMI = 00, it means "copy free." Furthermore, when EMI = 01, it means "no more copy." In the above, "copy never" means copy inhibit, and permits only viewing or listening of the AV data, "copy one generation" permits only a copy of one generation, or allows a copied AV data to be repeatedly viewed or listened any number of times, and "copy free" means that the data can be freely copied. Moreover, "no more copy" means an AV data after copying an AV data of "copy one generation," or prohibition of further copying.

[0010] In IEEE 1394, such EMI is used for designating a method of encryption, and that of authentication. In "copy free" in the case of EMI = 00, for example, encryption is not performed in transmission of an AV data. In "copy one generation" in the case of EMI = 10 and "no more copy" in the case of EMI = 11, a key used in encryption, and a method of authenticating an apparatus are different from those in "copy never" in the case of EMI = 11.

[0011] EMI is produced from a CGMS by an STB (Set Top Box: a satellite broadcasting receiver). Namely, a CGMS is added to a data in a broadcasting station, and an STB which receives a broadcast wave transmitted from the broadcasting station sends a received program to an IEEE 1394 bus. At this time, the CGMS is embedded into a portion of service information of an MPEG2 transport stream of an isochronous packet data. In one isochronous packet data, plural MPEG data are stored, and corresponding CGMSs exist for the

MPEG data, respectively.

[0012] EMI is produced from such a CGMS by the STB. The STB checks a CGMS of each data of the MPEG2 transport stream received from the broadcasting wave [sic; broadcasting station], and, as its typical value, gives one EMI to one isochronous packet data. The EMI is held in a header portion of the isochronous packet data.

[0013] The value of the EMI is equal to that of a CGMS in which the copyright is most severely restricted, among CGMSs of data existing in data of the received MPEG2 transport stream. When CGMSs of data in data of the received MPEG2 transport stream are 11, 10, and 10, for example, the value of the EMI is 11 in which the restriction is most severe. When CGMSs are 10, 10, 00; and 00, the value of the EMI is 10 in which the restriction is most severe, among them. In this way, the value of EMI is determined.

[0014] Conventionally, when a CGMS indicates that the contents of a copyright are "copy never," the corresponding data can be viewed or listened only once, but the time zone when viewing or listening is allowed is limited to that when the program is broadcast. In the case where the author intends to permit only one time of viewing or listening, therefore, also the time zone when viewing or listening is allowed is limited. In other words, even when a user wishes to view or listen a program in a time zone convenient for the user, the user is allowed to view or listen the program, only in the time zone when the program is broadcast. In the case where a CGMS indicates that the contents of a copyright are "copy one generation," when a data is once recorded onto a certain recording medium, the data cannot be thereafter moved into another recording medium.

[0015] In the case where an apparatus is configured so as not to have a transport decoder, the contents of a copyright are judged by using EMI. The same process as in the case of a CGMS applies also to the case of using EMI.

[0016] Conventionally, EMI added to the header of an IEEE 1394 packet data is deleted together with the header of the packet data when an AV data is output into a recording apparatus. Therefore, EMI is not recorded into the recording apparatus. This causes a problem in that, when an AV data is to be output, it is impossible to judge the contents of a copy right of the AV data, and which key and authentication method are to be used.

[0017] Even when EMI is recorded onto a recording medium by any method, there is a problem in that the user can tamper with the recorded EMI to modify the terms of the copy right.

[0018] In consideration of the problem in that, in the case where EMI is deleted without being recorded into a recording and reproducing apparatus, it is impossible to know copy right of an AV data in reproduction and which method of encryption is to be used, and the problem in that, in the case where EMI is recorded into a

recording and reproducing apparatus, the user can easily tamper with the EMI, it is an object of the invention to provide a recording and reproducing apparatus in which EMI is recorded in a recording process, and the user cannot easily tamper with the recorded EMI, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly used.

[0019] Conventionally, in the case where a CGMS indicates that copy right information is "copy never," the corresponding AV data can be viewed or listened only once, but the time zone when viewing or listening is allowed is limited to that when the program is broadcast. In the case where the author intends to permit only one time of viewing or listening, therefore, also the time zone when viewing or listening is allowed is limited. In other words, there is a problem in that, even when a user wishes to view or listen a program in a time zone convenient for the user, the user is allowed to view or listen the program, only in the time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0020] In the case where a CGMS indicates that copy right information is "copy one generation," when an AV data is once recorded onto a certain recording medium, the AV data cannot be moved into another recording medium.

[0021] It is an object of the invention to provide a recording and reproducing apparatus and a program recording medium in which, in the case where information indicative of copy right information of a program indicates copy inhibit, a user can view or listen an AV data in accordance with the intention of the author that viewing or listening is permitted only once, and the user can view or listen the AV data without limiting a time zone after the AV data is broadcast.

[0022] It is an object of the invention to provide a recording and reproducing apparatus and a program recording medium in which, in the case where copy right information of a program permits only one time of copying, an AV data can be moved from a recording medium into which the data is once recorded, to another recording medium.

[0023] Furthermore, conventionally, plural various apparatuses are connected to an IEEE 1394 bus to exchange data. In the case where such a recording and reproducing apparatus exchanges a copyrighted data with another apparatus, there is a problem in that the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author.

[0024] For example, there arises the case where the recording and reproducing apparatus records a data in which the contents of the copyright are "copy never," and thereafter plural apparatuses having the same function as the recording and reproducing apparatus simultaneously acquire the data from the recording and reproducing apparatus and record the data. In this case, the data of "copy never" is recorded into the plural apparatuses, and the data can be viewed or listened plural times, with the result that the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author that

only one time of viewing or listening is permitted. Furthermore, there arises the case where the recording and reproducing apparatus records a data in which the contents of the copyright are "copy never," and thereafter a monitor and an apparatus having the same function as the recording and reproducing apparatus acquire the data. In this case, after the data is viewed or listened one time by using the monitor, the recording and reproducing apparatus can reproduce only once the data so that the data can be viewed or listened one more time. Therefore, the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author that only one time of viewing or listening is permitted. In the case where plural such recording and reproducing apparatuses are connected to a transmitting apparatus such as an STB, having a function of receiving a broadcast wave and transmitting the received data to another apparatus, when a data in which the contents of the copyright are "copy never" is sent from the transmitting apparatus, the plural recording and reproducing apparatuses record the data, and the data can be viewed or listened plural times. As a result, the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author that only one time of viewing or listening is permitted.

[0025] Some of such transmitting apparatuses have an analog terminal so that an analog monitor is connected to the analog terminal and a video or audio data sent from a broadcasting station can be viewed or listened. There is a problem in that, in the case where the recording and reproducing apparatus exists when such an apparatus outputs a data, the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author.

[0026] When such an apparatus outputs a copyrighted data to an IEEE 1394 bus to which the recording and reproducing apparatus is connected, the data is once viewed or listened through the analog monitor, and then recorded into the recording and reproducing apparatus connected to the IEEE 1394 bus, with the result that the data can be viewed or listened two times. Therefore, the intention of the author that only one time of viewing or listening is permitted is not protected.

[0027] As described above, a prior art apparatus which reproduces only once a copyrighted data without changing the contents of the copyright involves various problems such as those described above. In the specification, an apparatus which solves these problems is referred to as a caching apparatus.

[0028] In consideration of the problem in that, in the case where plural apparatuses including an apparatus which reproduces only once a copyrighted data without changing the contents of the copyright are connected, the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author, and the problem in that, also in the case where a monitor is connected to a monitor terminal, when the apparatus outputs a copyrighted data, the copyright cannot be protected in accordance with the intention of the author, it is an object of the invention to provide a caching apparatus, a transmitting

apparatus, and a program recording medium in which, with respect to a copyrighted data, the copyright can be protected in accordance with the intention of the author, the data can be viewed or listened in an arbitrary time zone other than a time zone when the data is broadcast, and, even in the case where a monitor terminal is disposed and a monitor is connected to the terminal, when the data is copyrighted, the copyright can be protected in accordance with the intention of the author.

Disclosure of Invention

[0029] A 1st invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 1) is a recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:

inputting means for receiving a packet data which is based on IEEE 1394, and in which signal information for indicating copy right information of an AV data (hereinafter, referred to as EMI) is provided in a header of a packet according to IEEE 1394; and recording and reproducing means for recording and reproducing an AV data and the EMI which are held in the packet data received by said inputting means.

[0030] A 2nd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 2) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that four kinds of EMI are used, and, when an AV data indicating allowance "copy one generation" among them is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means performs recording while rewriting the EMI to EMI indicating "no more copy."

[0031] A 3rd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 3) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that said recording and reproducing means records the EMI into an area which a user cannot access.

[0032] A 4th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 4) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 3rd invention, characterized in that said area which a user cannot access is an area which cannot be accessed in the unit of LBA (logical block address), an area in which an area which can be accessed in the unit of LBA is limited, an alternate sector area, an area (AUX) other than an area which is to be reproduced as an AV data, a RAM added to a recording medium, a header area of an optical disk, a power calibration area, a recording management area, a lead-in area, or a lead-out area.

[0033] A 5th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 5) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records the AV data and the EMI in a same area with pairing the AV data and the EMI.

[0034] A 6th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 6) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records the AV data and the EMI in different areas with pairing the AV data and the EMI.

[0035] A 7th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 7) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, in a case where the AV data indicates that the AV data is not "copy free," when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records the AV data in plaintext.

[0036] An 8th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 8) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that said apparatus further comprises recording encrypting means for encrypting an AV data by encryption, modulation, or a change of a recording format, and, in the case where the AV data indicates that the data is not "copy free," when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records an AV data which is encrypted by said recording encrypting means.

[0037] A 9th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 9) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 8th invention, characterized in that, during recording, said recording encrypting means encrypts an AV data so that a kind of encryption and/or a key are different in accordance with a value of the EMI.

[0038] A 10th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 10) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, in a case where authentication with respect to an apparatus which sends out the AV data succeeds, said recording and reproducing means sets the EMI so as to be accessible by a user, and, in a case where the authentication does not succeed, records EMI in an area which the user cannot access.

[0039] An 11th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 11) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records EMI in an area which a user can access, restricts execution of a user access command for enabling the user to access the EMI, thereby disabling the user to access the EMI.

[0040] A 12th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 12) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 11th invention, characterized in that, in a case where authentication with respect to an apparatus which sends out the AV data succeeds, said recording and reproducing means allows execution of the user access command to enable the user to access the EMI, and, in a case where the authentication with respect to the apparatus which sends out the AV data does not succeed, does not allow

execution of the user access command.

[0041] A 13th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 13) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in a case where EMI indicates that the AV data is not "copy free," said recording and reproducing means encrypts the AV data and then outputs the encrypted data.

[0042] A 14th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 14) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 1st invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced,

in the case where the EMI indicates that the AV data is not "copy free" and authentication with respect to an apparatus of a reproduction destination has not yet succeeded, said recording and reproducing means does not output the AV data, and outputs an invalid data, and

in the case where the EMI indicates that the AV data is not "copy free" and authentication with respect to the apparatus of a reproduction destination succeeds, said recording and reproducing means outputs the AV data.

[0043] A 15th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 15) is a program recording medium characterized in that said medium stores a program for causing a computer to execute a whole or a part of functions of said recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 1st to 14th inventions.

[0044] A 16th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 16) is a recording medium characterized in that said medium records the EMI according to any one of the 1st to 14th inventions.

[0045] A 17th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 17) is a recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:

recording means for recording an AV data; and reproducing means for, in the case where the data is copyrighted, reproducing only once the data without changing contents of a copyright of the data which is recorded by said recording means.

[0046] An 18th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 18) is a recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:

recording means for recording an AV data; and reproducing means for, in the case where signal information indicating copy right information of the AV data shows "copy never" allowing viewing or listening to be performed only once, reproducing only once the AV data which is recorded by said record-

ing means.

[0047] A 19th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 19) is a recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:

recording means for recording an AV data; and reproducing means for, in the case where signal information indicating copy right information of the AV data shows "copy one generation" allowing copying to be performed only once, reproducing only once the AV data while setting signal information indicating copy right information of the AV data which has been copied once by said recording means, to "copy one generation" allowing copying to be again performed only once.

[0048] A 20th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 20) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 18th or 19th invention, characterized in that the copy right information is held as EMI in a header of a packet according to IEEE 1394, and sent to said apparatus as a packet data on the basis of IEEE 1394.

[0049] A 21st invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 21) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 18th or 19th invention, characterized in that the copy right information is a CGMS which is embedded into a content of a packet according to IEEE 1394, and sent to said apparatus as a packet data on the basis of IEEE 1394.

[0050] A 22nd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 22) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 18th to 21st inventions, characterized in that, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording means adds reproduction information indicating that the data has not yet been reproduced, and

in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be reproduced, said reproducing means adds the reproduction information indicating that the data has already been reproduced, to a reproduced portion of the AV data, thereby discriminating the portion from a not-yet-reproduced portion of the AV data.

[0051] A 23rd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 23) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 18th to 21st inventions, characterized in that, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be reproduced, said reproducing means deletes allocation information

relating to the AV data on a recording medium, and sets an area occupied by the AV data to a space area.

[0052] A 24th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 24) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 18th to 21st inventions, characterized in that, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be reproduced, said reproducing means erases a recording portion on a recording medium in which the AV data is recorded.

[0053] A 25th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 25) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 22nd invention, characterized in that said recording means records the AV data and the reproduction information into a same area with being correlated with each other.

[0054] A 26th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 26) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 22nd invention, characterized in that said recording means records the AV data and the reproduction information into different areas with being correlated with each other.

[0055] A 27th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 27) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 22nd, 25th, or 26th invention, characterized in that said recording means records the reproduction information into an area which a user cannot access.

[0056] A 28th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 28) is a recording medium characterized in that said medium records the reproduction information according to the 22nd, 25th, 26th, or 27th invention.

[0057] A 29th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 29) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 22nd, 25th, 26th, or 27th invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows that the AV data is "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the reproduction information shows that a whole or a part of the AV data has not yet been reproduced, said reproducing means encrypts the AV data in the portion and then outputs the encrypted data.

[0058] A 30th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 30) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 22nd, 25th, 26th, or 27th invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows that the AV data is "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the reproduction information shows that a whole or a part of the AV data has already been reproduced, said reproducing means encrypts the AV data in the portion and then outputs the encrypted data, and does not output a key for decoding.

[0059] A 31st invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 31) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 22nd, 25th, 26th,

27th, or 29th invention, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the reproduction information shows that a whole or partial portion of the AV data has already been reproduced, said reproducing means does not output the AV data in the part, and outputs an invalid data.

[0060] A 32nd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 32) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 18th to 21st inventions, characterized in that said apparatus has:

time-variant key producing means for producing a series of keys which are changed with a passage of time;
 recording encrypting means for encrypting the AV data by using the key; and
 reproduction decoding means for decoding the encrypted AV data,
 when the AV data is to be recorded, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said recording encrypting means sequentially encrypts the AV data by using the key produced by said time-variant key producing means,
 said recording means records the key and the AV data with correlating with each other,
 when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said reproducing means fetches the encrypted AV data and the key, and erases a recording portion of the fetched key, and
 said reproduction decoding means decodes the encrypted AV data by using the fetched key.

[0061] A 33rd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 33) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 32nd invention, characterized in that, when the recording portion of the fetched key is to be erased, said reproducing means deletes an information related to a recorded position of said key on the medium.

[0062] A 34th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 34) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 18th to 21st inventions, characterized in that said apparatus has:

time-variant key producing means for producing a series of keys which are changed with a passage of time;
 recording encrypting means for encrypting the AV data by using the key; and
 reproduction decoding means for decoding the encrypted AV data,

when the AV data is to be recorded, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy-one generation," said recording encrypting means sequentially encrypts the AV data by using the key produced by said time-variant key producing means,

said recording means records the key and the AV data with correlating with each other, and performs recording with adding key reading out information indicating that the key have not yet been read out, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said reproducing means fetches the encrypted AV data and the key, and adds the key reading out information indicating that the fetched key has already been read out, and said reproduction decoding means decodes the encrypted AV data by using the fetched key.

[0063] A 35th invention of the present invention (corresponding of claim 35) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 32nd or 34th invention, characterized in that said recording means records the key or the key reading out information into a same area as the AV data with being correlated with each other.

[0064] A 36th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 36) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 32nd or 34th invention, characterized in that said recording means records the key or the key reading out information into an area different from the AV data with being correlated with each other.

[0065] A 37th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 37) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 32nd, 34th, 35th, or 36th invention, characterized in that said recording means records the key or the key reading out information into an area which a user cannot access.

[0066] A 38th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 38) is a recording and reproducing apparatus according to the 27th or 37th invention, characterized in that said area which a user cannot access is an area which cannot be accessed in the unit of LBA (logical block address), an area in which an area which can be accessed in the unit of LBA is limited, an alternate sector area, an area (AUX) other than an area which is to be reproduced as an AV data, a RAM added to a recording medium, a header area of an optical disk, a power calibration area, a recording management area, a lead-in area, or a lead-out area.

[0067] A 39th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 39) is a recording medium characterized in that said medium records the key reading out information according to the 34th invention.

[0068] A 40th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 40) is a program recording medium characterized in that said medium stores a pro-

gram for causing a computer to execute a whole or a part of functions of said recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of the 18th to 39th inventions.

[0069] A 41st invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 41) is a caching apparatus comprising:

recording means for recording a data; and reproducing means for, in the case where the data is copyrighted, reproducing only once the data without changing contents of a copyright of the data which is recorded by said recording means, and connected to plural counter apparatuses, and characterized in that

said apparatus further comprises transmission selecting means for selecting which of said connected counter apparatuses is enabled to use a data reproduced by said reproducing means, in accordance with contents of a copyright.

[0070] A 42nd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 42) is a caching apparatus according to the 41st invention, characterized in that, when a copyrighted data is to be sent,

in the case where said counter apparatuses include one or more apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables only one of said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, or all apparatuses not having a function of said caching apparatus, excluding said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright, and in the case where said counter apparatuses include no apparatus having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables all of said counter apparatuses to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright.

[0071] A 43rd invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 43) is a caching apparatus according to the 41st or 42nd invention, characterized in that said transmission selecting means transfers a key for decoding an encrypted copyrighted data, to said counter apparatus, thereby selecting said counter apparatus.

[0072] A 44th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 44) is a caching apparatus according to the 41st or 42nd invention, characterized in that said transmission selecting means previously distributes keys for decoding a data, to said connected counter apparatuses, and determines one of the keys to be used for encrypting a copyrighted data, thereby selecting said counter apparatus.

[0073] A 45th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 45) is a caching apparatus

according to the 43rd or 44th invention, characterized in that, in advance to transfer the key to said counter apparatus, said transmission selecting means performs authentication with respect to said counter apparatus, and, only when the authentication succeeds, transfers the key.

[0074] A 46th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 46) is a caching apparatus according to the 45th invention, characterized in that, when none of said counter apparatuses not having a function of said caching apparatus performs reception, said transmission selecting means detects said caching apparatus, and instructs said caching apparatus to issue an authentication request for receiving the key.

[0075] A 47th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 47) is a caching apparatus according to the 45th invention, characterized in that, when the key is to be transferred to said counter apparatus, said transmission selecting means encrypts the key by using a temporary key which is used in the authentication with respect to said counter apparatus, and transfers the encrypted key to said counter apparatus.

[0076] A 48th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 48) is a caching apparatus according to any one of the 41st to 47th inventions, characterized in that, in the case where the data is not copyrighted ("copy free"), said transmission selecting means does not encrypt the data.

[0077] A 49th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 49) is a caching apparatus according to any one of the 41st to 48th inventions, characterized in that the contents of the copyright is one of "copy never" allowing viewing or listening to be performed only once, "copy one generation" allowing copying to be performed only once, and "no more copy" not allowing further copying.

[0078] A 50th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 50) is a caching apparatus according to any one of the 41st to 49th inventions, characterized in that one of said connected counter apparatuses is a monitor which is directly connected to said caching apparatus.

[0079] A 51st invention of the present invention is a transmitting apparatus comprising outputting means for outputting a data, and connected to plural counter apparatuses, and characterized in that said apparatus comprises

transmission selecting means for selecting which of said connected counter apparatuses is enabled to use a data output by said outputting means, in accordance with contents of copyright, and said counter apparatuses include one or more, or none of said caching apparatus according to any one of the 41st to 50th inventions.

[0080] A 52nd invention of the present invention

(corresponding to claim 52) is a transmitting apparatus according to the 51st invention, characterized in that, when a copyrighted data is to be sent,

in the case where said counter apparatuses include one or more apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables only one of said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, or all apparatuses not having a function of said caching apparatus, excluding said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright, and in the case where said counter apparatuses include no apparatus having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables all of said counter apparatuses to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright.

[0081] A 53rd invention of the present invention is a transmitting apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:

analog outputting means for outputting a data in an analog manner; and
digital outputting means for outputting the data in a digital manner, and
when said digital outputting means outputs a copyrighted data in a digital manner, an analog output of said analog outputting means is nullified.

[0082] A 54th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 54) is a transmitting apparatus according to the 53rd invention, characterized in that,

when said digital outputting means outputs a copyrighted data in a digital manner to a recording and reproducing apparatus comprising:
recording means for recording a data; and
reproducing means for, in the case where the data is copyrighted, reproducing only once the data without changing contents of the copyright of the data, the analog output of said analog outputting means is nullified.

[0083] A 55th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 55) is a transmitting apparatus according to the 51st or 52nd invention, characterized in that one of said connected counter apparatuses is a monitor which is directly connected to said transmitting apparatus.

[0084] A 56th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 56) is a transmitting apparatus according to any one of the 51st to 55th inventions characterized in that the contents of the copyright is one of "copy never" allowing viewing or listening to be performed only once, "copy one generation" allowing copying to be performed only once, and "no more copy" not

allowing further copying.

[0085] A 57th invention of the present invention (corresponding to claim 57) is a program recording medium characterized in that said medium stores a program for causing a computer to execute a whole or a part of functions of said caching apparatus or said transmitting apparatus according to any one of the 41st to 56th inventions.

Brief Description of Drawings

[0086]

Fig. 1 is a basic configuration view of a hard disk apparatus in first, fourth to eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, fourteenth, and twentieth embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 2 is a basic configuration view of a tape apparatus in a second embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 3 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting a hard disk apparatus in first and third embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 4 is a block diagram of authenticating and encrypting means in the first to eighth embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 5 is a block diagram of recording encrypting means in the first, second, and fourth to eighth embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 6 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting a VCR in the second embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 7 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting the hard disk apparatus in the fourth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 8 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting the hard disk apparatus in the fifth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 9 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting the hard disk apparatus in the sixth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 10 is a view showing the configuration of a user 1 area and a user 2 area in the sixth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 11 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting the hard disk apparatus in the seventh embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 12 is a block diagram of stream controlling means constituting the hard disk apparatus in the eighth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 13 is a view showing a recording method in the first embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded in the unit of block.

Fig. 14 is a view showing a recording method in the first embodiment of the invention in the case where recording is performed at each turning point of EMI.

Fig. 15 is a view showing a recording method in the first embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded with being paired with a block.

Fig. 16 is a view showing a recording method in the first embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded with being paired with a block.

Fig. 17 is a view showing a recording method in the second embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded onto a tape. 5

Fig. 18 is a view showing a recording method in the second embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded onto a tape with being embedded into an AV data. 10

Fig. 19 is a view showing a recording method in the second embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded into a memory given to a tape medium, every unit of track.

Fig. 20 is a view showing a recording method in the second embodiment of the invention in the case where EMI is recorded into a memory given to a tape medium, at each turning point of EMI. 15

Fig. 21 is a view showing meaning of introduction of a concept of "no more copy" into EMI, in the first embodiment of the invention. 20

Fig. 22 is a view showing a basic configuration view of an optical disk in the third embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 23 is a block diagram showing the configuration of recording encrypting means in the third embodiment of the invention. 25

Fig. 24 is a view showing a recording format of a DVD-R in the third and ninth embodiments of the invention. 30

Fig. 25 is a view showing a recording format of a DVD-RAM in the third and ninth embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 26 is a block diagram showing the configuration of stream controlling means in the ninth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information and a data block are recorded into different areas of a disk medium. 35

Fig. 27 is a block diagram showing the configuration of authenticating and encrypting means in the ninth to fourteenth embodiments of the invention. 40

Fig. 28 is a block diagram showing the configuration of reproduction information managing means A in the ninth and twelfth embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 29 is a view showing a recording method of recording reproduction information into a system area in the unit of data block in the ninth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information and a data block are recorded into different areas of a disk medium. 45

Fig. 30 is a view showing a recording method of recording reproduction information on the basis of a start LBA and an end LBA where reproduction information is varied in the ninth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information and a data block are recorded into different areas of a disk medium. 50

Fig. 31 is a block diagram showing the configuration

of stream controlling means in the tenth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information and a data block are recorded into the same area of a disk medium.

Fig. 32 is a block diagram showing the configuration of reproduction information managing means B in the tenth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information and a data block are recorded into the same area of a disk medium.

Fig. 33 is a view showing a recording method of recording reproduction information and a data block in the tenth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information and a data block are recorded into the same area of a disk medium.

Fig. 34 is a flowchart showing the flow of processes in recording and reproducing an AV data in the ninth and tenth embodiments of the invention, and the flow of processes in the case where, in reproduction, reproduction information is updated after end of reproduction.

Fig. 35 is a flowchart showing the flow of processes in recording and reproducing an AV data in the ninth and tenth embodiments of the invention, and the flow of processes in the case where, in reproduction, reproduction information is updated during reproduction.

Fig. 36 is a basic configuration view of a VCR in the twelfth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 37 is a block diagram showing the configuration of stream controlling means in the twelfth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information is recorded into a memory, and an AV data is recorded onto a tape.

Fig. 38 is a view showing a recording method of recording reproduction information in the unit of track in the twelfth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information is recorded into a memory, and an AV data is recorded onto a tape.

Fig. 39 is a view showing a recording method of recording reproduction information on the basis of a start track and an end track where reproduction information is varied in the twelfth embodiment of the invention in the case where reproduction information is recorded into a memory, and an AV data is recorded onto a tape.

Fig. 40 is a basic configuration view of a VCR in the thirteenth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 41 is a block diagram showing the configuration of stream controlling means in the thirteenth embodiment of the invention in the case where an AV data is erased while being reproduced.

Fig. 42 is a view showing a recording method of recording EMI information and an AV data onto a tape in the thirteenth embodiment of the invention in the case where an AV data is erased while being reproduced.

Fig. 43 is a block diagram showing the configuration

of stream controlling means in the fourteenth embodiment of the invention in the case where, when an AV data is to be recorded onto a disk medium, the data is recorded with being reencrypted, and, when the data is to be reproduced, the AV data is decoded and output and a key recorded on the disk medium is then erased.

Fig. 44 is a flowchart showing the flow of processes in the fourteenth embodiment of the invention in the case where the key is erased after reproduction of an AV data is ended.

Fig. 45 is a flowchart showing the flow of processes in the fourteenth embodiment of the invention in the case where the key is erased during reproduction of an AV data.

Fig. 46 is a flowchart showing the flow of processes in the eleventh embodiment of the invention in the case where an AV data is erased after the AV data is reproduced.

Fig. 47 is a flowchart showing the flow of processes in the eleventh embodiment of the invention in the case where an AV data is erased during reproduction of the AV data.

Fig. 48 is a block diagram showing the configuration of stream controlling means in the eleventh embodiment of the invention in the case where an AV data is erased during or after reproduction of the AV data.

Fig. 49 is a block diagram showing the configuration of transmission selecting means in a sixteenth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 50 is a block diagram showing the configuration of transmission selecting means in a seventeenth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 51 is a block diagram showing the configuration of an STB serving as a transmitting apparatus in eighteenth and twenty-first embodiments of the invention.

Fig. 52 is a block diagram showing the configuration of a TV monitor serving as a noncaching apparatus in a nineteenth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 53 is a block diagram showing the configuration of stream controlling means of a hard disk apparatus serving as a caching apparatus in the twentieth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 54 is a view showing a state where a caching apparatus and a noncaching apparatus are connected to a digital bus in the fifteenth embodiment of the invention.

Fig. 55 is a block diagram showing connection of each apparatus to the digital bus in the fifteenth embodiment of the invention.

(Description of the Reference Numerals)

[0087]

1 digital I/F means

2 stream controlling means
3 LBA accessing means
4 hard disk controlling means
5 actuator means
6 disk medium
7 head
8 spindle motor means
9 stream controlling means
10 deformatting means
11 formatting means
12 controlling means
13 memory accessing means
14 reproducing means
15 recording means
16 recording head
17 reproducing head
18 tape medium
19 memory
20 EMI detecting means
21 EMI giving means
22 EMI accessing/rewriting means
23 EMI judging means
24 authenticating and encrypting means
25 recording encrypting means
26 data block accessing means
27 file accessing means
28 stream accessing means
29 decoding means
30 authenticating means
31 key producing means
32 encrypting means
33 changeover switch
34 changeover switch
35 key producing means
36 decoding means A
37 decoding means B
38 encryption selecting means
39 encrypting means A
40 changeover switch
41 changeover switch
209 EMI detecting means
210 EMI giving means
211 EMI accessing means
212 EMI judging means
45 213 authenticating and encrypting means
214 invalid data outputting means
215 file accessing means
216 stream accessing means
217 reproduction information managing means A
50 218 data block accessing means
219 changeover switch
220 decoding means
221 authenticating means
222 key producing means
55 223 encrypting means
224 changeover switch
225 changeover switch
226 reproduction information updating means

227 already-reproduction judging means
 228 reproduction information producing means
 229 reproduction information accessing means
 230 changeover switch
 301 transmission selecting means
 302 mode storing means
 303 receiving device candidate determining means
 304 receiving device judging means
 305 mode determining means
 306 notifying means
 307 key producing and outputting means
 308 encrypting means
 309 authenticating means
 310 changeover switch
 311 noncaching apparatus
 312 caching apparatus
 313 receiving device grouping means
 314 key producing means
 315 key distributing means
 316 current transmission group storing means
 317 transmission group determining means
 318 transmission request detecting means
 319 antenna
 320 tuner section
 321 transport stream decoder section
 322 EMI giving means
 323 digital I/F means
 324 AV stream decoder section
 325 D/A converting section
 326 changeover switch
 327 digital I/F means
 328 EMI detecting means
 329 authenticating and decoding means
 330 display apparatus

Best Mode for Carrying Out the Invention

[0088] Hereinafter, embodiments of the invention will be described with reference to the drawings.

(Embodiment 1)

[0089] Initially, a first embodiment will be described.

[0090] In the embodiment, taking a hard disk apparatus as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus, the case will be described where EMI is recorded in an area which the user cannot access; when EMI is not 00 during recording, an AV data is reencrypted for recording and then recorded; when EMI is not 00 during reproduction, an AV data is encrypted and then output; when EMI is 10 during recording, it is rewritten to 01 and then recording is performed; and, when EMI is 11 during recording, recording is not performed, and EMI and an AV data are stored into different areas.

[0091] Fig. 1 is a basic configuration view of the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment.

[0092] The hard disk apparatus is configured by

digital I/F means 1, stream controlling means 2, LBA accessing means 3, hard disk controlling means 4, actuator means 5, a disk medium 6, a head 7, and spindle motor means 8.

5 [0093] The digital I/F means 1 is means for inter-connecting external AV apparatuses such as an STB (Set Top Box: a satellite broadcasting receiver), a television monitor, a DVHS, and the hard disk apparatus, for controlling the AV apparatuses, and for transferring an AV data, and is, for example, an IEEE standard for High
 10 performance Serial Bus which is described in IEEE 1394-1995. The transfer of an AV data in the digital I/F means 1 is performed by a transfer system which is called an isochronous system, and the transfer process
 15 can be performed while ensuring the real time of a transferred data. For example, a transferred data is an MPEG2 transport stream or a DV stream. The AV apparatuses of the digital I/F means 1 are controlled by an asynchronous transfer system which is called an asyn-
 20 chronous system. The stream controlling means 2 is means for performing accessing of a stream and an authenticating process. The LBA accessing means 3 is I/F means for accessing the disk medium 6 with designating an LBA (logical block address), and in the hard
 25 disk apparatus. The hard disk controlling means 4 is means for controlling the actuator means 5 and the spindle motor means 8, and for performing signal processing for performing recording and reproduction on the disk medium 6 via the head 7. The head 7 is
 30 means for recording and reproducing a signal from/to the disk medium 6. The spindle motor means 8 is means for rotating the disk medium at a constant speed. The actuator means 5 is means for positioning the head 7 to an objective position of the disk medium 6.

35 [0094] In the embodiment, an EMI (Encryption Mode Indicator) which is produced from a CGMS is used as copy right information. Therefore, an EMI will be described.

[0095] Before the description, the data transfer protocol of IEEE 1394 which has been slightly mentioned in the description of the digital I/F means 1 will be briefly described. When an AV data is viewed or listened
 40 through a monitor, data must be transmitted periodically and synchronously. When stop of the hard disk apparatus, start of video recording, and the like are to be controlled, it is necessary to transmit and receive a control command asynchronously and at an arbitrary timing. In IEEE 1394, the former data is an isochronous packet data, and the latter data is an asynchronous packet
 45 data.

[0096] In a data transfer, the right to use the bus is requested to a management node in advance to the transfer, and a copy right is then obtained.

[0097] In an asynchronous transfer, the transmission node ID and the reception node ID are sent together with the transferred data, as a packet data. In the reception node, when its own ID is confirmed and the packet is received, an acknowledge signal is sent to
 50
 55

the transmission node. As a result, one transaction is ended.

[0098] In an isochronous transfer, the side of the transmission node requests an isochronous channel together with the transmission rate. The channel ID is sent together with a transmitted data, as a packet data. The reception node confirms the channel ID desired by oneself, and then receives the packet.

[0099] In the above, the data transfer protocol of IEEE 1394 has been briefly described.

[0100] Returning to the description of EMI, a CGMS is added to an AV data in a broadcasting station. An STB which receives a broadcast wave transmitted from the broadcasting station sends a received program to an IEEE 1394 bus. At this time, the CGMS is embedded into a portion of service information of an MPEG2 transport stream of an isochronous packet data. In one isochronous packet data, plural MPEG2 data are stored, and corresponding CGMSs exist for the MPEG2 data, respectively.

[0101] EMI is produced from such a CGMS by the STB. The STB checks a CGMS of each of AV data which are to be transmitted by one isochronous packet data, and, as its typical value, gives one EMI to one isochronous packet data. The EMI is held in the header portion of the isochronous packet data.

[0102] The value of EMI is equal to that of a CGMS in which the terms of the copy right are most severely restricted, among CGMSs of AV data existing in one isochronous packet data. When CGMSs of AV data existing in one isochronous packet data are 11, 10, and 10, for example, the value of the EMI is 11 in which the restriction is most severe. When CGMSs are 10, 10, 00, and 00, the value of the EMI is 10 in which the restriction is most severe, among them. In this way, the value of EMI is determined.

[0103] In the above, EMI has been described.

[0104] Returning to Fig. 1, the stream controlling means 2 of the hard disk apparatus is configured as shown in Fig. 3. Namely, the stream controlling means 2 is configured by EMI detecting means 21, EMI giving means 22, EMI accessing/rewriting means 23, EMI judging means 24, authenticating and encrypting means 25, recording encrypting means 26, data block accessing means 27, file accessing means 28, and stream accessing means 29.

[0105] The EMI detecting means 21 is means for detecting a field in which EMI is described, from a header portion in an isochronous packet data which is input from the digital I/F means 1. The EMI giving means 22 is means for giving instructed EMI to a header portion in an isochronous packet data which is to be output to the digital I/F means 1. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 is means for recording detected EMI information into the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. It is means for, in this case, recording EMI while rewriting "copy one generation" into "no more copy." The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 is

means for, when EMI of an input signal from the digital I/F means 1 is "copy never" or "no more copy," inhibiting recording, and for recording and reproducing read out EMI information correspondingly with a designated data block. The EMI judging means 24 is means for judging the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right from the EMI information. The authenticating and encrypting means 25 is means for performing authentication among the AV apparatuses via the digital I/F means 1, for decoding an encrypted AV data which is input from the digital I/F means 1, and for encrypting an AV data which is read out from the side of the disk medium 6 via the data block accessing means 27. The authenticating and encrypting means 25 will be described later. The recording encrypting means 26 is means for encrypting a decoded AV data for the purpose of recording. The recording encrypting means 26 will be described later. The data block accessing means 27 is means for recording or reproducing data of a designated block number via the LBA accessing means 3, and for notifying the number of a block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 24. The stream accessing means 29 is means for designating the number of a block which is to be recorded or reproduced to the data block accessing means 27 in order to execute a command of access system 2 which is received from the digital I/F means 1, for managing a stream pointer indicating the position of the block in which the stream currently exists, in accordance with instructions such as reproduction, recording, or stop while assuming the initial data block to the final data block of the user area of the disk medium 6 as one tape, and for performing recording or reading of stream pointer management information on the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The access system 2 is a system conforming to, for example, AV/C Digital Interface Command Set VCR subunit Specification version 2.0.1. The file accessing means 28 is means for designating the number of a block which is to be recorded or reproduced to the data block accessing means 27 in order to execute a command of access system 3 which is received from the digital I/F means 1, for managing the order configuration of names of files and plural data blocks constituting the files, having file management information, for managing also a file pointer indicating the position of the current block in a file, in accordance with instructions such as reproduction, recording, or stop according to the command of access system 3, and for performing recording or reading of information of the order configuration of data blocks of these files, file pointer information, and the like on the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The access system 3 is an accessing system which conforms to, for example, AV/C Digital Interface Command Set General Specification, and which controls an AV apparatus by instructing the name of a file and the contents of the process on the file, such as reproduction, recording, or stop.

[0106] The authenticating and encrypting means 25

of Fig. 3 is configured as shown in Fig. 4, or by decoding means 30, authenticating means 31, key producing means 32, encrypting means 33, a changeover switch 34, and a changeover switch 35.

[0107] The authenticating means 31 is means for performing authentication between AV apparatuses connected through the digital I/F means 1, and for, if authentication succeeds, when an AV data is to be output the side of to the digital I/F means 1, transferring a key which is used in encryption by oneself, to the counter apparatus, and for, when an AV data is to be input from side of the digital I/F means 1, receiving a key which is to be used in decoding by oneself, from the counter apparatus. The encrypting means 33 is means for encrypting an AV data which is read out from the disk medium 6 via the data block accessing means 27, by using the key produced by the key producing means 31, and for outputting the encrypted data to the digital I/F means 1. The key producing means 32 is means for producing a key which is to be used for encryption, and for transferring the key to the encrypting means 33 and the authenticating means 31. The decoding means 30 is means for decoding an encrypted AV data which is input from the digital I/F means 1, by using the key obtained in the authenticating means 31, and for outputting the decoded data to the data block accessing means 27. The switches 34 and 35 are means for, when the judgement result of the EMI judging means 24 shows that EMI is 00, performing switching so that an input/output data does not pass through the encrypting means 33 and the decoding means 30, and for, when EMI is other than 00, performing switching so that an input/output data passes through the encrypting means 33 and the decoding means 30.

[0108] The recording encrypting means 26 is configured as shown in Fig. 5. Namely, the recording encrypting means 26 is configured by key producing means 36, decoding means A 37, encryption selecting means 39, encrypting means A 40, a changeover switch 41, and a changeover switch 42.

[0109] The encryption selecting means 39 is means for switching over techniques of encryption and decoding in accordance with the value of EMI corresponding to a portion of an AV data which is to be recorded or reproduced. When EMI is "copy one generation," for example, the encrypting means A 40 is used in recording, and the decoding means A 37 is used in reproduction. When EMI is "no more copy," the decoding means 37 is used in reproduction. When EMI is "copy free," an AV data is caused so as not to pass through the encrypting means 40 and the decoding means A 37. The changeover switches 41 and 42 are means for switching to encrypting and decoding methods which are determined by the encryption selecting means 39. The key producing means 36 is means for producing a key which is to be used for encryption/decoding, in accordance with the value of EMI corresponding to a portion of a data which is to be recorded or reproduced,

and for transferring the key to the decoding means A 37 and the encrypting means A 40. The encrypting means A 40 is means for, when EMI is "copy one generation," encrypting an AV data which is sent from the authenticating and encrypting means 25, and for transferring the encrypted data to the data block accessing means 27. The decoding means A 37 is means for, when EMI is "no more copy" or "copy one generation," receiving an AV data from the data block accessing means 27, for decoding the AV data, and for transferring the decoded data to the authenticating and encrypting means 25.

[0110] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0111] The case where a source apparatus sending an AV data is an STB will be described. There is a controller which sends a program reception command, a record start command, a record stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the hard disk apparatus, and the STB departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0112] First, it is assumed that the controller sends to the STB a reception start command for starting reception of a program which is sent from a broadcasting station, and the record start command to the hard disk apparatus. The case where an AV data which is sent from an apparatus other than the STB, for example, a recording and reproducing apparatus such as a DVHS or a hard disk apparatus is to be received will be described later. Then, the program which is sent from a broadcasting station is received by the STB, and EMI is given to the program. Thereafter, the program is sent as an isochronous packet data to the IEEE 1394 bus. When the hard disk apparatus receives the record start command in the form of a command of the access system 2 or the access system 3 from the digital I/F means 1, the digital I/F means 1 confirms the number of a channel which is intended to be acquired by oneself, and fetches the corresponding isochronous packet data. It is assumed that the record start command in the form of a command of the access system 2 is received. Then, the authenticating means 31 sends an authentication command to the STB. The EMI detecting means 21 detects EMI information held in the header portion of the fetched isochronous packet data. The EMI judging means 24 judges the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right from the detected EMI information. The result is input to the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The authenticating means 31 determines the authentication method in accordance with the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right. When EMI is 11 or "copy never," the significance of the AV data is high, and hence authentication based on a public key is performed. A hard disk apparatus is a recording apparatus which is not provided with a function of authentication based on a public key for "copy never." In the case where recording from the STB to a hard disk is to be

performed, therefore, the authenticating means 31 receives the result of the EMI judging means 24, and the authentication fails. The selection of the method of authentication depending on EMI will be described later. When EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," the significance of the AV data is not higher than that in the case where EMI is 11, and hence authentication based on a common key is performed. When EMI is 00 or "copy free," the AV data is not significant. Therefore, it is deemed that authentication succeeds, without performing authentication. Upon receiving the authentication command, the STB performs authentication based on a common key between the STB and the hard disk apparatus. When the authentication succeeds, the key is transferred to the hard disk apparatus. The authenticating means 31 receives the key sent from the STB, via the digital I/F means 1, and then transfers the key to the decoding means 30. When EMI is 00, however, the authenticating means 31 does not receive the key sent from the STB. In this case, the AV data itself is not encrypted. In the case where EMI is 10, the decoding means 30 receives the key from the authenticating means 31.

[0113] It is assumed that the record command is received in the form of a command of the access system 2 via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI of the AV data sent via the digital I/F means 1 is not 00, the changeover switch 34 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 30. When EMI is 00, switching is performed so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 30. The decoding means 30 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The stream accessing means 29 instructs the data block accessing means 27 to record block x. The data block accessing means 27 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 records the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 21, correspondingly with the notified block number. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," when the EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6, recording is performed while rewriting EMI to 01 or "no more copy." The meaning of rewriting EMI of "copy one generation" to "no more copy" will be described later. The recording encrypting means 26 reencrypts the AV data which has passed through the authenticating and encrypting means 25. Namely, in response to the result of the EMI judging means 24, the encryption selecting means 39 decides presence or absence of encryption in accordance with the value of EMI. Specifically, when EMI is 00 or "copy free," the encryption selecting means 39 switches the changeover switch 42 so as not to pass through the encrypting means 40. When EMI is not 00, the encryption selecting means 39 switches the changeover switch 42 so as to pass through the encrypting means 40. In this way, when EMI of an AV data to be recorded is 00, the data is not encrypted,

and, when EMI is not 00, the data is reencrypted. The AV data which has passed through the recording encrypting means 26 is transferred to the data block accessing means 27, and then recorded onto the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. Next, the stream accessing means 29 increments the number of the block which is currently accessed, by one or sets $x = x + 1$ in order to update the stream pointer management information. Next, the stream accessing means 29 judges whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0114] Next, the case where the hard disk apparatus reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded in the hard disk apparatus was recorded from the STB. There is a controller which sends a reproduction start command, a reproduction stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the hard disk apparatus, and the television monitor departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0115] First, the controller sends the reproduction start command to the television monitor, and sends the reproduction start command also to the hard disk apparatus. In the hard disk apparatus, thereafter, the data block accessing means 27 notifies the accessing place to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 fetches EMI information of the notified accessing place, and transfers the EMI information to the EMI giving means 22. The data block accessing means 27 reproduces an AV data via the LBA accessing means 3, the reproduced data is decoded by the recording encrypting means 26, and the decoded data is transferred to the EMI giving means 22 via the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The EMI giving means 22 sends a pair of the AV data and EMI as an isochronous packet data to the IEEE 1394 bus via the digital I/F means 1. The television monitor sends an authentication command to the hard disk apparatus. The television monitor fetches the isochronous packet data sent from the hard disk apparatus, and determines the authentication method while referring the EMI information given to the data. When EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the authenticating means 31 performs authentication with respect to the television monitor based on a common key via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI is 00, authentication is not performed, and it is deemed that authentication succeeds. The embodiment handles the case where a data which is obtained by recording an AV data sent from the STB

is reproduced. Therefore, all AV data in which EMI is 10 or "copy one generation" are recorded while rewriting EMI to 01. When the hard disk apparatus receives the authentication command via the digital I/F means 1, the authenticating means 31 determines the kind of authentication while referring the EMI information, and performs authentication with respect to the television monitor. When authentication succeeds, the authenticating means 31 transfers the key which is produced by the key producing means 32, to the encrypting means 33. When EMI is 00, the key is not transferred to the encrypting means 33, and the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 33. When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33.

[0116] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 29 instructs the data block accessing means 27 to reproduce block x. The data block accessing means 27 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing/switching means 23 [sic: the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23]. At the same time, the data block accessing means 27 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The EMI accessing/switching means 23 [sic: the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23] reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 24. The judgement result is sent to the recording encrypting means 26 and the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The AV data which is read by the data block accessing means 27 is transferred to the recording encrypting means 26.

[0117] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00, the changeover switch 35 of the authenticating and encrypting means 25 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 33, and the changeover switch 41 of the recording encrypting means 26 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the decoding means A 37. Therefore, the AV data is output without being encrypted. When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33.

[0118] When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 41 is switched to the decoding means A 37 by instructions of the encryption selecting means 39 based on the value of EMI. The AV data which is formed as plaintext by the recording encrypting means 26 is encrypted by the encrypting means 33, and then output via the digital I/F means 1.

[0119] Next, the stream accessing means 29 updates the stream pointer management information to

increment the number of the block which is currently accessed, by one, or sets $x = x + 1$. Next, the stream accessing means 29 judges whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received.

[0120] In the embodiment, presence and absence of recording encryption are switched over in accordance with EMI information. Even when the user tampers with EMI information to set "copy free," therefore, recording encryption cannot be correctly decoded, and the tampering can be nullified.

[0121] The above-mentioned selection of the method of authentication depending on EMI will be described. Namely, two kinds of authentication methods are used. As the authentication method for "copy never" in the case where EMI is 11, authentication of method A is used. As the authentication method for "copy one generation" in the case where EMI is 10 and "no more copy" in the case where EMI is 01, authentication of method B is used. Specifically, authentication based on a public key can be used as authentication of method A, and authentication based on a common key can be used as authentication of method B. An apparatus which does not record an AV data, such as a television monitor or an STB supports both authentications of methods A and B, and an apparatus which records an AV data, such as a VTR supports only authentication of method B. An optical disk apparatus such as a DVD-RAM performs reproduction of a DVD-ROM medium onto which an AV data of CGMS = 11 or EMI = 11 is pre-recorded, in addition to recording of an AV data from an STB, and hence supports both authentications of methods A and B. When the hard disk apparatus of the invention is to record an AV data sent from an STB, authentication in the case where EMI is 11 fails because the hard disk apparatus of the invention supports only authentication of method B. Therefore, an AV data in the case where EMI is 11 is not recorded. In the case where EMI is 10, authentication succeeds, and the AV data can be recorded into the hard disk apparatus of the invention. In the case where EMI is 01, authentication fails because the authenticating means 31 does not have a common key for 01, and, even if it is deemed that authentication succeeds, the AV data is not recorded judging from the value of EMI. During reproduction of the hard disk apparatus of the invention, in the case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor, when EMI is 01 or "no more copy," authentication succeeds and the AV data can be output to the television monitor because the television monitor supports authentication of method B and has a common key for "no more copy." Since a VTR supports authentication of method B, authentication succeeds. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," an AV data can be recorded into a VTR. In the case where EMI is 01 or "no

more copy," authentication succeeds, but, since a VTR is not provided with a common key for "no more copy," the VTR does not record the AV data judging from EMI information or it is deemed that authentication fails. In the case of an optical disk apparatus, when an AV data in which EMI is 11 or "copy never" is sent from the STB, authentication succeeds because authentications of methods A and B are supported. Since information of EMI indicates "copy never," however, the AV data is not recorded or it is deemed that authentication fails. In the case where an AV data in which EMI is 10 or "copy one generation" is sent from the STB, authentication succeeds and recording is enabled. In the case where an AV data in which EMI is 01 or "no more copy" is sent from the STB, the AV data is not recorded or it is deemed that authentication fails. In the case where a data is to be reproduced on a television monitor, a data of "no more copy" in which EMI is 01 can be authenticated by method B and then output. In reproduction of a DVD-ROM medium in which the CGMS is 11 or EMI is 11 of "copy never", a data is authenticated by method A and then output. In the case where an AV data which is prerecorded onto a DVD-ROM medium, and in which the CGMS is 10 or EMI is 10 of "copy one generation" is to be recorded in a VCR, the data is authenticated by method B and then output while EMI is kept to be 10.

[0122] As described above, the method of authentication is selected in accordance with the value of EMI. As a result, there are advantages that safety is improved by using a safer authentication method for an AV data of higher significance, and that simpler authentication is used for an AV data of lower significance, thereby preventing a burden in excess of that need from being applied to an apparatus.

[0123] Next, as described above, during recording, EMI of "copy one generation" is rewritten to "no more copy." The meaning of this will be described. Referring to Fig. 21, it is assumed that an AV data 103 includes an AV data having EMI of 10 and a CGMS of 10 and 00. It is assumed that recorder 1 (104) is a recorder which accesses only EMI in recording and reproduction. Furthermore, it is assumed that recorder 2 is a recorder which accesses both EMI and a CGMS. For the sake of convenience in description, it is assumed that EMI has no concept of "no more copy." Namely, in the same manner as a CGMS, when a data of "copy one generation" is recorded, its EMI is rewritten to "copy never." When the AV data 103 is recorded by the recorder 1 (105), therefore, the EMI is rewritten to 11 as an AV data 105. Next, it is assumed that an AV data recorded in the recorder 1 (104) is reproduced to recorder 2 (106). The recorder 2 (106) accesses the EMI of the AV data 105. Since EMI is 11, copy inhibit is known from the information of EMI. In order to obtain further detail information, therefore, the recorder accesses the CGMS of the AV data 105. With respect to the CGMS of the AV data 105, the data of A is 10 and that of B is 00. Therefore, both can be copied. The recorder 2 (106) judges in this way,

records both the data of A and that of B, and rewrites the CGMS of A from 10 to 11, with the result that the EMI and the CGMS become as those of an AV data 107. Although the CGMS is 10, therefore, the data of A of the AV data 103 is recorded by the recorder 1 (104) and the recorder 2 (106). Namely, recording of two or more generations is performed, and the copy right is not protected.

[0124] By contrast, it is assumed that, when an AV data in which EMI is 10 is to be recorded, the EMI is rewritten to 01. It is assumed that an AV data 108 in Fig. 21 includes an AV data having EMI of 10 and a CGMS of 10 and 00. It is assumed that a recorder 1 (109) is a recorder which accesses only EMI in recording and reproduction. Furthermore, it is assumed that a recorder 2 (111) is a recorder which accesses both EMI and a CGMS. When the AV data 108 is recorded by the recorder 1 (109), therefore, the EMI is rewritten to 01 as an AV data 110. Next, it is assumed that an AV data 110 recorded in the recorder 1 (109) is reproduced to the recorder 2 (111). The recorder 2 (111) accesses the EMI of the AV data 110. Since EMI is 01, it is known that the AV data was copied one time in the past. In order to obtain further detail information, the recorder 2 (111) accesses the CGMS of the AV data 110. Then, it is seen that the data of A has a CGMS of 10 and that of B has a CGMS of 00. The data of A can be copied one time, but the EMI is 01 or its history shows that the data was copied one time in the past. Therefore, the recorder 2 (111) does not record the data of A. The data of B is recorded, and the EMI is set to 00. In this way, the data of A is not recorded into the recorder 2 (111). As described above, when "no more copy" is introduced by EMI, a history indicating whether recording was performed in the past or not can be known, and hence also a data in which the CGMS is 10 is prevented from being recorded two times.

[0125] In the embodiment, the case where a command is executed in the access system 2 by the stream accessing means 29 has been described. Alternatively, a command may be executed in the access system 3 by the file accessing means 28.

[0126] The case where an AV data which is sent from an apparatus other than the STB is to be recorded into the hard disk apparatus of the invention as described above will be described. In AV data sent from the STB, there is no data in which EMI is 01 or "no more copy." In the case where a data is sent from an apparatus other than the STB, also an AV data in which EMI is "no more copy" exists. In the case where EMI is 01 or "no more copy," it is judged that the authenticating means 31 fails authentication, or the AV data and the EMI information are prevented from being recorded onto the disk medium 6. The others are identical with those of the case where an AV data sent from the STB is to be recorded.

[0127] In the recording encrypting means in the invention, any kind of encryption method may be

applied on an AV data. Encryption which is based on change of the format in recording an AV data, or modulation of an AV data may be employed.

[0128] A configuration in which the recording encrypting means in the invention is not disposed may be employed. Namely, a configuration in which, in recording onto a disk medium, an AV data is recorded in plaintext may be employed.

[0129] In the above, it is assumed that authentication is performed after the apparatus receives the record start command. The invention is not restricted to this. A method such as that in which, when connection is made by means of IEEE 1394 or a former program is received, authentication is previously performed may be employed.

[0130] In the above, the description has been made while assuming that the meaning of bits of EMI to be recorded is identical with that of EMI to be transmitted. The invention is not restricted to this. In a recording apparatus, unique bit allocation may be performed.

[0131] The format in the case where EMI is recorded onto the disk medium 6 will be described.

[0132] Fig. 13 shows the case where EMI is recorded into a system area 60 in the unit of block. Referring to Fig. 13, the disk medium 6 is divided into the system area 60 and a user area 61. The system area 61 is an area which is used by the system and cannot be accessed by the user. By contrast, the user area 61 is an area which the user uses. It is assumed that the user area 61 consists of a k number of blocks. An area into which EMI is to be recorded is disposed in a part of the system area 60. EMI of each block is recorded in this area. Referring to a table which is stored in the form of a bit map, all EMI of block 1 (62), block 2 (63), block 3 (64), and block k (65) is 00. Namely, this shows that the areas are "copy free." However, areas such as the block k (65) are areas which have not yet been used. It is assumed that, with respect to an unused area also, EMI information is set to 00. Since EMI of block 11, block 12, and block 13 is 01, they are areas of "no more copy." Such EMI information is produced and updated by the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. Since EMI information is stored in the system area 60, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the EMI information, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the hard disk apparatus having the function of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0133] Next, the case where EMI information is managed by means of an address will be described. Referring to Fig. 14, the disk medium 6 is divided into a system area 66 and a user area 67. The system area 66 is an area which is used by the system and cannot be accessed by the user. By contrast, the user area 67 is an area which the user uses. A stream is defined while dividing data each time when EMI information is changed. With respect to EMI information, EMI information is expressed by EMI of the stream, and the start LBA and the end LBA of the stream. In stream 1 (68),

the start LBA is a0, the end LBA is a1, and all EMI in this stream is "copy free." In stream 2 (69), the start LBA is a1, the end LBA is a2, and all EMI in this stream is "no more copy." In stream 3 (70), the start LBA is a2, the end LBA is a3, and all EMI in this stream is "copy free." In stream n (71), the start LBA is a4, the end LBA is a5, and all EMI in this stream is "no more copy." Such EMI information is produced and updated by the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. Since EMI information is stored in the system area 66, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the EMI information, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0134] Next, the case where EMI information is arranged with being paired with a data block will be described. Referring to Fig. 15, the disk medium 6 is divided into a system area 72 and a user area 73. The system area 72 is an area which is used by the system and cannot be accessed by the user. By contrast, the user area 73 is an area which the user uses. In Fig. 13, the system area is ensured as a bulk area. By contrast, in Fig. 15, the system area is ensured correspondingly with each block. EMI corresponding to block 1 (74), block 2 (75), block 3 (76), ..., and block k (77) is stored in the system area with being respectively paired. EMI of block 1 (74) is 00 and indicates "copy free." EMI of block 2 (75) is 01 and indicates "no more copy." Such EMI information is produced and updated by the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. Since EMI information is stored in the system area 72, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the EMI information, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0135] In the first embodiment described above, it is not always necessary to place EMI information in the system area 72, and EMI information may be placed in the user area 73. In this case, however, a measure for preventing EMI information from being directly changed by the user is required. This will be specifically described in fourth and fifth embodiments.

[0136] EMI information may be recorded into an area which cannot be accessed by the LBA accessing means 3. In the case of a hard disk apparatus, there is an alternate sector area for an alternate process, and EMI information may be recorded into the alternate sector area. In this case, the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 directly designates a physical address such as a cylinder, a head, or a sector of the disk medium 6.

[0137] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI accessing/rewriting means and the data block accessing means in the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention.

[0138] In place of the LBA accessing means in the embodiment, accessing means for designating a cylinder, a head, or a sector may be used. In this case, EMI

information may be recorded in any area which cannot be changed by the user.

(Embodiment 2)

[0139] Next, a second embodiment will be described.

[0140] In the embodiment, taking a VCR (Video Cassette Recorder) as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus, the case will be described where EMI is recorded in an area which the user cannot access; when EMI is not 00 during recording, an AV data is reencrypted for recording and then recorded; when EMI is not 00 during reproduction, an AV data is encrypted and then output; when EMI is 10 during recording, it is rewritten to 01 and then recording is performed; and, when EMI is 11 during recording, recording is not performed, and EMI and an AV data are stored into different areas.

[0141] Fig. 2 shows the basic configuration of a VCR. Namely, the VCR is configured by digital I/F means 1, stream controlling means 9, deformatting means 10, formatting means 11, controlling means 12, memory accessing means 13, reproducing means 14, recording means 15, a head 16, a recording head 17, a reproducing head 18, a tape medium 19, and a memory 20.

[0142] The digital I/F means 1 is means for inter-connecting external AV apparatuses such as an STB, a television monitor, a DVHS, and a hard disk apparatus, for controlling the AV apparatuses, and for transferring an AV data. The stream controlling means 9 is means for performing accessing of a stream and an authenticating process. The deformatting means 10 is means for converting the format of a signal which is reproduced by the reproducing means 14. The formatting means 11 is means for converting a format to a signal which is to be recorded onto the tape medium 19, and for transferring it to the recording means 15. The controlling means 12 is means for controlling running of a tape, tracking of the head 16, the reproducing means 14, and the recording means 15. The memory accessing means 13 is means for accessing the memory 20 added to the tape medium 19. The reproducing means 14 is means for signal processing a reproduction signal from the reproducing head 18 of the head 16, and for outputting a digital AV data. The recording means 15 is means for signal processing an AV data from the stream controlling means 9, and for sending a record signal to the recording head 17 of the head 16. The head 16 is means for recording a signal onto the tape medium 19, and for reproducing a signal on the tape medium 19. The recording head 17 is disposed in the head 16, and is means for recording a signal onto the tape medium 19. The reproducing head 18 is disposed in the head 16, and is means for reproducing a signal on the tape medium 19. The tape medium 19 is means for recording a signal for the purpose of recording and reproduction.

The memory 20 is means for recording and reproducing EMI information.

[0143] Returning to Fig. 2, the stream controlling means 9 of the VCR is configured as shown in Fig. 6. Namely, the stream controlling means is configured by EMI detecting means 21, EMI giving means 22, EMI accessing/rewriting means 23, EMI judging means 24, authenticating and encrypting means 25, recording encrypting means 26, the formatting means 10, the deformatting means 11, command executing means 43, and EMI information managing means 102.

[0144] In the embodiment, only portions which are different from the first embodiment will be described. The formatting means 10 and the deformatting means 11 have been described above. The command executing means 43 is means for executing a command received from the digital I/F means 1, for interpreting the processing contents of the command, and for instructing the controlling means 12 to perform reproduction, recording, stop, and the like. For example, such a command is a system conforming to AV/C Digital Interface Command Set VCR subunit Specification version 2.0.1. The EMI information managing means 102 is means for, in recording, recording EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 21, correspondingly with the track number which is notified from the recording means 14, and for, in reproduction, reading out EMI information corresponding to the track number which is notified from the reproducing means 15.

[0145] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0146] The case where a source apparatus sending an AV data is an STB will be described. There is a controller which sends a program reception command, a record start command, a record stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the VCR, and the STB departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted. Authentication of the STB and the VCR is identical with that of the first embodiment, and hence its description is omitted.

[0147] It is assumed that the command executing means 43 receives a record command via the digital I/F means 1. The controlling means 12 controls the tape medium 19 to run, and instructs the recording means 14 to perform recording. The recording means 14 notifies the number (= x) of the track which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 and the EMI information managing means 102. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 rewrites the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 21, correspondingly with the value of the information. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," EMI information is rewritten to 01 or "no more copy." The EMI information managing means 102 records the EMI information and the notified track number correspondingly with each other. When EMI of an AV data sent via

the digital I/F means 1 is not 00, the changeover switch 34 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 30. When EMI is 00, the changeover switch 34 is switched so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 30. The decoding means 30 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The recording encrypting means 26 re-encrypts the AV data which has passed through the authenticating and encrypting means 25. Namely, in response to the result of the EMI judging means 24, the encryption selecting means 39 decides the method of encryption in accordance with the value of EMI. Specifically, when EMI is 00 or "copy free," the encryption selecting means 39 switches the changeover switch 42 so as not to pass through the encrypting means A 40. When EMI is not 00, the encryption selecting means 39 switches the changeover switch 42 so as to pass through the encrypting means A 40. In this way, when EMI of an AV data to be recorded is 00, the data is not encrypted, and, when EMI is not 00, the data is re-encrypted. The AV data which has passed through the recording encrypting means 26 is transferred to the formatting means 10 to be format-converted, and then recorded onto the tape medium 19 via the recording means 14. Next, the track number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set. Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded into the VCR has been described.

[0148] Next, the case where the VCR reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded in the VCR was recorded from the STB. There is a controller which sends a reproduction start command, a reproduction stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the VCR, and the television monitor departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted. Authentication is identical with that of the first embodiment, and hence its description is omitted.

[0149] It is assumed that the command executing means 43 receives the reproduction command from the digital I/F means 1. The controlling means 12 controls the tape medium 19 to run, and instructs the reproducing means 15 to perform reproduction from the tape medium 19. The reproducing means 15 notifies the current track number ($= x$) to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 and the EMI information managing means 102. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 and the EMI information managing means 102 read out EMI information corresponding to the notified track number ($= x$). The read-out EMI information is subjected to

judgement in the EMI judging means 24, and then sent to the EMI giving means 22, the authenticating and encrypting means 25, and the recording encrypting means 26. The AV data which is reproduced by the reproducing means 15 and format-converted by the formatting means 11 is sent to the recording encrypting means 26.

[0150] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00, the changeover switch 35 of the authenticating and encrypting means 25 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 33, and the changeover switch 41 of the recording encrypting means 26 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the decoding means A 37. Therefore, the AV data is output without being encrypted. When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33.

[0151] When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 41 is switched to the decoding means A 37 by instructions of the encryption selecting means 39 based on the value of EMI. The AV data which is formed as plaintext by the recording encrypting means 26 is encrypted by the encrypting means 33, paired with EMI information by the EMI giving means 22, and then output via the digital I/F means 1. It is assumed that an apparatus serving as a reproduction destination is previously selected in the step of authentication. This has been described in the first embodiment.

[0152] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set. Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received.

[0153] In the embodiment, the kind of recording encryption, and that of the key are switched over in accordance with EMI information in the same manner as the first embodiment. Even when the user tampers with EMI information, therefore, correspondence with recording encryption is not established, and correct decoding cannot be performed. Therefore, the tampering can be nullified.

[0154] Next, the method of recording EMI information will be described.

[0155] Fig. 17 shows an AV data and EMI information which are to be recorded onto a tape. An AV data is recorded in a data recording portion 83, and EMI information is recorded in an EMI information recording portion 84. The EMI information recording portion 84 is an area which the user cannot access. Therefore, the user cannot tamper with the EMI information to modify the terms of the copy right.

[0156] Fig. 18 shows another method of recording an AV data and EMI information which are to be recorded onto a tape. An AV data is recorded into a data

recording portion 86. EMI is recorded while being mixed with the AV data.

[0157] Figs. 19 and 20 respectively show the cases where EMI information is recorded into the memory 20 added to the tape medium 19.

[0158] In Fig. 19, an EMI recording portion 94 is disposed in a part of the memory 20. EMI information of each track is recorded in the EMI recording portion 94. The whole tape 88 is configured by a k number of tracks. The EMI recording portion 94 in which EMI is to be recorded is disposed in a part of the memory 20. EMI of each block is recorded in this area. Referring to a table which is stored in the form of a bit map, all EMI of block 1 (89), block 2 (90), block 3 (91), and block k (92) is 00. Namely, this shows that the area is "copy free." However, areas such as the block k (65) are areas which have not yet been used. It is assumed that, with respect to an unused area also, EMI information is set to 00. Since EMI of block 11, block 12, and block 13 is 01, they are areas of "no more copy." Such EMI information is produced and updated by the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. Since EMI information is stored in the memory 20, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the EMI information, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the VCR having the function of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0159] Fig. 20 shows the case where EMI information is managed by means of an address. A stream is defined while dividing data each time when EMI information is changed. With respect to EMI information, EMI information is expressed by EMI of the stream, and the start track and the end track of the stream. In stream 1 (96), the start track is a0, the end track is a1, and all EMI is "copy free." In stream 2 (97), the start track is a1, the end track is a2, and all EMI is "no more copy." In stream 3 (98), the start track is a2, the end track is a3, and all EMI is "copy free." In stream n (99), the start track is a4, the end track is a5, and all EMI is "no more copy." Such EMI information is produced and updated by the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. Since EMI information is stored in the memory 20, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the EMI information, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the VCR of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0160] It is assumed that authentication is performed after the apparatus receives the record start command. The invention is not restricted to this. A method such as that in which, when connection is made by means of IEEE 1394 or a former program is received, authentication is previously performed may be employed.

[0161] In the above, the description has been made while assuming that the meaning of bits of EMI to be recorded is identical with that of EMI to be transmitted. The invention is not restricted to this. In a recording apparatus, unique bit allocation may be performed.

[0162] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI accessing/rewriting means, the EMI information managing means, the formatting means, and the deformatting means of the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention.

(Embodiment 3)

[0163] Next, a third embodiment will be described.

[0164] In the embodiment, taking an optical disk apparatus (for example, a DVD-R, or a DVD-RAM) as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus, the case will be described where EMI is recorded in an area which the user cannot access; when EMI is not 00 during recording, an AV data is reencrypted for recording and then recorded; when EMI is not 00 during reproduction, an AV data is encrypted and then output; when EMI is 10 during recording, it is rewritten to 01 and then recording is performed; when EMI is 11 during recording, recording is not performed; and, when a disk medium on which an AV data in which CGMS is 11 or 10 is previously encrypted for recording and then recorded is to be reproduced, an encrypted data for recording is decoded and then output after being encrypted, and EMI and an AV data are stored into different areas.

[0165] Fig. 22 is a view showing the basic configuration of the optical disk apparatus of the embodiment. The optical disk apparatus is configured by the digital I/F means 1, stream controlling means 112, LBA accessing means 3, disk controlling means 113, actuator means 114, a disk medium 116, a pickup 115, and spindle motor means 117. The digital I/F means 1 and the LBA accessing means 3 are identical with those of the basic configuration of the hard disk apparatus which has been described in the first embodiment, and hence their description is omitted. The configuration of the stream controlling means is fundamentally identical with the basic configuration of the hard disk apparatus which has been described in the first embodiment, but is different in that recording encrypting means 118 of Fig. 23 is used in place of the recording encrypting means 26. The recording encrypting means 118 will be described later.

[0166] The disk controlling means 113 is means for controlling the actuator means 114, the spindle motor means 117, and the pickup 115, and for performing signal processing for performing recording and reproduction on the disk medium 116 via the pickup 115. The spindle motor means 117 is means for rotating the disk medium 116 at a constant linear velocity, rotating each zone at a constant rotational velocity, or rotating each zone at a constant linear velocity, thereby controlling to the number of revolutions appropriate for performing recording or reproduction on the disk medium. The actuator means 114 is means for positioning the pickup to an objective recording and reproducing position of the disk medium. The pickup 115 is means for control-

ling the focal length and tracking with respect to the disk medium 116, and signaling or reproducing with respect to the disk medium.

[0167] The recording encrypting means 118 is configured as shown in Fig. 23. Namely, the recording encrypting means 118 is configured by key producing means 36, decoding means A 37, decoding means B 38, encryption selecting means 39, encrypting means A 40, a changeover switch 41, and a changeover switch 42.

[0168] The encryption selecting means 39 is means for switching over techniques of encryption and decoding in accordance with the value of EMI corresponding to a portion of an AV data which is to be recorded or reproduced. When EMI is "copy one generation," for example, the encrypting means A 40 is used in recording, and the decoding means A 37 is used in reproduction. When EMI is "no more copy," the decoding means A 37 is used in reproduction. When EMI is "copy never," the decoding means B 38 is used in reproduction. When EMI is "copy free," an AV-data is caused so as not to pass through the encrypting means 40, the decoding means A 37, and the decoding means B 38. The changeover switches 41 and 42 are means for switching to encrypting and decoding methods which are determined by the encryption selecting means 39. The key producing means 36 is means for producing a key which is to be used for encryption/decoding, in accordance with the value of EMI corresponding to a portion of a data which is to be recorded or reproduced, and for transferring the key to the decoding means A 37, the decoding means B 38, and the encrypting means A 40. The encrypting means A 40 is means for, when EMI is "copy one generation," encrypting an AV data which is sent from the authenticating and encrypting means 25, and for transferring the encrypted data to the data block accessing means 27. The decoding means A 37 is means for, when EMI is "no more copy" or "copy one generation," receiving an AV data from the data block accessing means 27, for decoding the AV data, and for transferring the decoded data to the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The decoding means B 38 is means for, when EMI is "copy never," receiving an AV data from the data block accessing means 27, for decoding the AV data, and for transferring the decoded data to the authenticating and encrypting means 25.

[0169] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0170] The case where a source apparatus sending an AV data is an STB will be described. There is a controller which sends a program reception command, a record start command, a record stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the optical disk apparatus, and the STB departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0171] First, it is assumed that the controller sends

to the STB a reception start command for starting reception of a program which is sent from a broadcasting station, and the record start command to the optical disk apparatus. Then, the program which is sent from a broadcasting station is received by the STB, and EMI is given to the program. Thereafter, the program is sent as an isochronous packet data to the IEEE 1394 bus. When the optical disk apparatus receives the record start command in the form of a command of the access system 2 or the access system 3 from the digital I/F means 1, the digital I/F means 1 confirms the number of a channel which is intended to be acquired by oneself, and fetches the corresponding isochronous packet data. It is assumed that the record start command in the form of a command of the access system 2 is received. Then, the authenticating means 31 sends an authentication command to the STB. The EMI detecting means 21 detects EMI information held in the header portion of the fetched isochronous packet data. The EMI judging means 24 judges the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right from the detected EMI information. The result is input to the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The authenticating means 31 determines the authentication method in accordance with the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right. When EMI is 11 or "copy never," the significance of the AV data is high, and hence authentication based on a public key is performed. In the case where recording from the STB to the optical disk is to be performed, however, the optical disk does not record a data, and the optical disk does not perform authentication because "copy never" means copy inhibit, or the authenticating means 31 receives the result of the EMI judging means 24, and the authentication fails. When EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," the significance of the AV data is not higher than that in the case where EMI is 11, and hence authentication based on a common key is performed. When EMI is 00 or "copy free," the AV data is not significant. Therefore, it is deemed that authentication succeeds, without performing authentication. Upon receiving the authentication command, the STB performs authentication based on a common key between the STB and the optical disk apparatus. When the authentication succeeds, the key is transferred to the optical disk apparatus. The authenticating means 31 receives the key sent from the STB, via the digital I/F means 1, and then transfers the key to the decoding means 30. When EMI is 00, however, the authenticating means 31 does not receive the key sent from the STB. In this case, the AV data itself is not encrypted. In the case where EMI is 10, the decoding means 30 receives the key from the authenticating means 31.

[0172] It is assumed that the record command is received in the form of a command of the access system 2 via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI of the AV data sent via the digital I/F means 1 is not 00, the changeover switch 34 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 30. When EMI is

00, the changeover switch 34 is switched so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 30. The decoding means 30 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The stream accessing means 29 instructs the data block accessing means 27 to record block x. The data block accessing means 27 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed; to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 records the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 21, correspondingly with the notified block number. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," when the EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6, recording is performed while rewriting EMI to 01 or "no more copy." The recording encrypting means 118 reencrypts the AV data which has passed through the authenticating and encrypting means 25. Namely, in response to the result of the EMI judging means 24, the encryption selecting means 39 decides presence or absence of encryption in accordance with the value of EMI. Specifically, when EMI is 00 or "copy free," the encryption selecting means 39 switches the changeover switch 42 so as not to pass through the encrypting means A 40. When EMI is not 00, the encryption selecting means 39 switches the changeover switch 42 so as to pass through the encrypting means A 40. In this way, when EMI of an AV data to be recorded is 00, the data is not encrypted, and, when EMI is not 00, the data is reencrypted. The AV data which has passed through the recording encrypting means 118 is transferred to the data block accessing means 27, and then recorded onto the disk medium 116 via the LBA accessing means 3. Next, the stream accessing means 29 increments the number of the block which is currently accessed, by one or sets $x = x + 1$ in order to update the stream pointer management information. Next, the stream accessing means 29 judges whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0173] Next, the case where the optical disk apparatus reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded in the optical disk apparatus was recorded from the STB. There is a controller which sends a reproduction start command, a reproduction stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the optical disk apparatus, and the television monitor departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0174] First, the controller sends the reproduction

start command to the television monitor, and sends the reproduction start command to the optical disk apparatus also. In the optical disk apparatus, thereafter, the data block accessing means 27 notifies the accessing place to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 fetches EMI information of the notified accessing place, and transfers the EMI information to the EMI giving means 22. The data block accessing means 27 reproduces an AV data via the LBA accessing means 3, the reproduced data is decoded by the recording encrypting means 118, and the decoded data is transferred to the EMI giving means 22 via the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The EMI giving means 22 sends a pair of the AV data and EMI as an isochronous packet data to the IEEE 1394 bus via the digital I/F means 1. The television monitor sends an authentication command to the optical disk apparatus. The television monitor fetches the isochronous packet data sent from the optical disk apparatus, and determines the authentication method while referring the EMI information given to the data. When EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the authenticating means 31 performs authentication with respect to the television monitor based on a common key via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI is 00, authentication is not performed, and it is deemed that authentication succeeds. The embodiment handles the case where a data which is obtained by recording an AV data sent from the STB is reproduced. Therefore, all AV data in which EMI is 10 or "copy one generation" are recorded while rewriting EMI to 01. When the optical disk apparatus receives the authentication command via the digital I/F means 1, the authenticating means 31 determines the kind of authentication while referring the EMI information, and performs authentication with respect to the television monitor. When authentication succeeds, the authenticating means 31 transfers the key which is produced by the key producing means 32, to the encrypting means 33. When EMI is 00, the key is not transferred to the encrypting means 33, and the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 33. When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33.

[0175] It is assumed that the optical disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 29 instructs the data block accessing means 27 to reproduce block x. The data block accessing means 27 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23. At the same time, the data block accessing means 27 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 116 via the LBA accessing means 3. The EMI accessing/rewriting means 23 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 116. The read out EMI informa-

tion is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 24. The judgement result is sent to the recording encrypting means 118 and the authenticating and encrypting means 25. The AV data which is read out by the data block accessing means 27 is transferred to the recording encrypting means 118.

[0176] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00, the changeover switch 35 of the authenticating and encrypting means 25 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 33, and the changeover switch 41 of the recording encrypting means 118 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through both the decoding means A 37 and the decoding means B 38. Therefore, the AV data is output without being encrypted. When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 35 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33.

[0177] When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 41 is switched to either of the decoding means A 37 and the decoding means B 38 by instructions of the encryption selecting means 39 based on the value of EMI. In the case where an AV data from the STB is to be recorded and reproduced, the decoding means A is selected because EMI = 01. The AV data which is formed as plaintext by the recording encrypting means 118 is encrypted by the encrypting means 33, and then output via the digital I/F means 1.

[0178] Next, the stream accessing means 29 updates the stream pointer management information to increment the number of the block which is currently accessed, by one, or sets $x = x + 1$. Next, the stream accessing means 29 judges whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received.

[0179] Next, the case where a DVD-ROM medium in which prerecording is previously performed and CGMS = 11 or CGMS = 10 is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data of CGMS = 11 has been recorded by the recording encryption method B, and an AV data of CGMS = 10 has been recorded by the recording encryption method A. Furthermore, it is assumed that the optical disk apparatus described in the embodiment can understand a CGMS in a recording medium.

[0180] First, the case where a prerecorded disk of CGMS = 11 is to be reproduced will be described. A controller sends the reproduction start command to the television monitor, and sends the reproduction start command to the optical disk apparatus also. Then, the optical disk apparatus reads out a CGMS signal recorded in a specific area of the disk medium, and it is known that CGMS = 11 (copy never). Therefore, the EMI giving means 22 sends the encrypted data to the IEEE 1394 bus with adding EMI = 11. At this time, the

process flows in the following manner. First, the result of the CGMS is notified to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23, and a process is performed while assuming that an AV data of EMI = 11 is recorded. As a result, the EMI judging means 24 judges that EMI = 11. In accordance with the result of judgement on EMI, the data output of the recording encrypting means 118 is switched to the decoding means B 38 by the encryption selecting means 39. This causes the AV data which is recorded with being encrypted, to be once decoded. In accordance with the result of judgement on EMI, the changeover switch 33 of the authenticating and encrypting means 25 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33. As a result, a reencrypted AV data is output onto the IEEE 1394 bus. On the other hand, the television monitor issues an authentication command to the optical disk apparatus. Because of the data of EMI = 11, authentication based on a public key is performed. When the authentication succeeds, the optical disk apparatus transfers the key to the television monitor. The television monitor decodes the encrypted AV data by using the key, and reproduces the data on a screen.

[0181] Next, the case where a prerecorded disk of CGMS = 10 is to be reproduced will be described. The controller sends the reproduction start command to the television monitor, and sends the reproduction start command to the optical disk apparatus also. Then, the optical disk apparatus reads out a CGMS signal recorded in a specific area of the disk medium 116, and it is known that CGMS = 10 (copy one generation). Therefore, the EMI giving means 22 sends the encrypted data to the IEEE 1394 bus with adding EMI = 10. At this time, the process flows in the following manner. First, the result of the CGMS is notified to the EMI accessing/rewriting means 23, and a process is performed while assuming that an AV data of EMI = 10 is recorded. As a result, the EMI judging means 24 judges that EMI = 10. In accordance with the result of judgement on EMI, the data output of the recording encrypting means 118 is switched to the decoding means A 37 by the encryption selecting means 39. This causes the AV data which is recorded with being encrypted, to be once decoded. In accordance with the result of judgement on EMI, the changeover switch 35 of the authenticating and encrypting means 25 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 33. As a result, a reencrypted AV data is output onto the IEEE 1394 bus. On the other hand, the television monitor issues an authentication command to the optical disk apparatus. Because of the data of EMI = 10, authentication based on a common key is performed. When the authentication succeeds, the optical disk apparatus transfers the key to the television monitor. The television monitor decodes the encrypted AV data by using the key, and reproduces the data on the screen.

[0182] As described above, in the embodiment, the method of recording encryption is changed in accord-

ance with EMI information. Even when EMI is tampered with during output, therefore, the method of recording encryption is different, and, when recording encryption is to be decoded, the decoding is performed by another method which fails to correspond. As a result, a correct data is not obtained, and hence the tampering can be nullified.

[0183] In the embodiment, EMI information may be recorded into an area which cannot be accessed by the LBA accessing means. As shown in Fig. 24, in the case of a DVD-R, the area may be an area which is called a power calibration area (PCA) and which is used in test writing for adjustment of the laser power or the like, or an area which is called a recording management area (RMA) where information of an after-writing position in the case where a data is after-written. Alternatively, a lead-in area where TOC information and the like are recorded, or a lead-out area indicating the end may be used. As shown in Fig. 25, in the case of a DVD-RAM, a header portion where ID information for each sector and the like are recorded may be used in addition to the above-mentioned areas. In a DVD-RAM also, EMI may be recorded in an alternate sector area. In summary, EMI is required to be recorded in an area which the user cannot directly access.

[0184] The EMI recording format may be implemented in the same manner as that shown in the first embodiment.

[0185] In place of the LBA accessing means in the embodiment, MSF accessing means may be used. MSF accessing means is used for designating a physical address on an optical disk by means of a minute, a second, and a frame (one frame equals to 1/75 sec.).

(Embodiment 4)

[0186] Next, a fourth embodiment will be described.

[0187] In the embodiment, in addition to the first embodiment, the case where, when authentication has not yet been completed and EMI is not 00, an invalid data is output will be described.

[0188] In the configuration of the embodiment, only portions which are different from the first embodiment will be described. Referring to Fig. 7, in the stream controlling means 2, authentication completion judging means 44, a changeover switch 45, and invalid data outputting means 46 are portions which are different from the first embodiment. The authentication completion judging means is means for judging whether authentication has succeeded or not. The invalid data outputting means 46 is means for outputting an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen. The changeover switch 45 is means for, when authentication has not yet been completed, switching to the side of the invalid data outputting means 46, and for, when authentication has succeeded, switching to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 25.

[0189] Next, the operation of the embodiment will

be described.

[0190] In the operation of the embodiment, only portions which are different from the operation of the first embodiment will be described. During reproduction, the authentication completion judging means 44 judges whether authentication has succeeded or not. In the case where EMI is not 00 and authentication has not yet succeeded, the changeover switch 45 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 46. In this case, the invalid data outputting means 46 outputs an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen. In the case where the authentication completion judging means 44 judges that authentication has succeeded or EMI is 00, the changeover switch 45 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 25. In this case, when EMI is 00, the authenticating and encrypting means outputs an AV data of plaintext, and, when EMI is not 00, outputs an encrypted AV data.

[0191] As described above, when EMI is not 00, a valid data is not output. Therefore, data transfer between AV apparatuses can be performed more safely.

[0192] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI accessing/rewriting means and the data block accessing means of the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention.

(Embodiment 5)

[0193] Next, a fifth embodiment will be described.

[0194] In the embodiment, the case where EMI is recorded while being mixed with an AV data unlike the first and third embodiments will be described.

[0195] In the embodiment, only portions which are different from the first embodiment will be described. In the stream controlling means 2 of Fig. 8, EMI mixing means 47 is means for mixing EMI and an AV data with each other during recording. EMI separating means 48 is means for separating EMI and an AV data from each other during reproduction.

[0196] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0197] In the operation of the embodiment, only portions which are different from the operation of the first embodiment will be described. During recording, EMI which is detected by the EMI detecting means 21, and an AV data which is encrypted by the recording encrypting means 26 are mixed with each other by the EMI mixing means 47. For example, a process such as that of adding EMI to an empty field of an AV data is performed. During reproduction, EMI is separated from a reproduced AV data by the EMI separating means 48.

[0198] A method of recording EMI is performed as shown in Fig. 16. EMI and an AV data are recorded with being paired with each other in a user area 78 of the disk medium 6. EMI and a part of an AV data are recorded with being paired with each other in block 1

(79), block 2 (80), block 3 (81), ..., and block k (82), respectively.

[0199] When an AV data and EMI are mixedly recorded as described above, the frequency of accessing to a disk can be reduced as compared with the case where an AV data and EMI are separately recorded.

[0200] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI mixing means, the EMI separating means, and the data block accessing means of the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention.

(Embodiment 6)

[0201] Next, a sixth embodiment will be described.

[0202] In the embodiment, the case will be described where the user area of the disk medium 6 is divided into two areas, EMI and an AV data are stored in one of the areas, the other area is used for executing a command handling a computer data or the like, and the former area cannot be accessed by executing a command handling a computer data or the like.

[0203] In the configuration of the embodiment, only portions which are different from that of the first embodiment will be described. In the stream controlling means 2 of Fig. 9, EMI mixing means 47 is means for mixing EMI and an AV data with each other during recording. EMI separating means 48 is means for separating EMI and an AV data from each other during reproduction. User 2 area judging means 49 is means for dividing a user area into a user 1 area 51 and a user 2 area 52 as shown in Fig. 20, for judging whether an LBA which is designated by a command of the access system 1 is within the user 2 area or not, and for, if the LBA is outside the user 2 area, controlling so that the command of the access system 1 is not executed. A changeover switch 50 is means for, in the case where the judgement result of the user 2 area judging means 49 shows that the LBA is outside the user 2 area, stopping execution of the command. The access system 1 is an access system in which a record command or a reproduction command is instructed while designating the address of a disk where recording or reproduction is to be performed by using an LBA, and the reading size by using the number of sectors. Such an access system is described in, for example, Information technology Serial Bus Protocol 2 (SBP-2) Revision 2h November 10, 1997.

[0204] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0205] In the operation of the embodiment, only portions which are different from the operation of the first embodiment will be described.

[0206] During recording, EMI which is detected by the EMI detecting means 21, and an AV data which is encrypted by the recording encrypting means 26 are mixed with each other by the EMI mixing means 47. For

example, a process such as that of adding EMI to an empty field of an AV data is performed. During reproduction, EMI is separated from a reproduced AV data by the EMI separating means 48. The AV data and EMI are recorded into or reproduced from the user 1 area 51 by execution of a command by the file accessing means 28 which performs a process by a command of the access system 3, or by execution of a command by the stream accessing means 29 which performs a process by a command of the access system 2. By contrast, in the case where a command of the access system 1 for handling a computer data is supported, there is a possibility that a user 1 area where an AV data is recorded is accessed and EMI information or the like is tampered with. As shown in Fig. 10, therefore, the user area is divided into the user 1 area 51 and the user 2 area 52. A command of the access system 1 uses the user 2 area 52. When a designated address reaches the user 1 area, the user 2 area judging means 49 judges that the address moves beyond the range, and a command is not executed. According to this configuration, EMI information and an AV data which are stored in the user 1 area are prevented from being tampered with. Therefore, access systems different from an AV data such as a computer can be simultaneously supported.

[0207] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI mixing means, the EMI separating means, and the data block accessing means of the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention.

(Embodiment 7)

[0208] Next, a seventh embodiment will be described.

[0209] In the embodiment, an example will be described in which, in the case where a command of the access system 1 which has been described in the sixth embodiment is supported, a command of the access system 1 is not executed unless authentication with respect to an apparatus that performs a process in the access system 1 succeeds.

[0210] In the configuration of the embodiment, only portions which are different from that of the sixth embodiment will be described. In the stream controlling means 2 of Fig. 11, the authentication completion judging means is means for judging whether authentication with respect to an apparatus that performs a process by a command of the access system 1 has succeeded or not. A changeover switch 58 is means for, in the case where authentication has not yet succeeded, not executing a command of the access system 1, and for, in the case where authentication has succeeded, executing a command of the access system 1.

[0211] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0212] In the operation of the embodiment, only

portions which are different from the operation of the sixth embodiment will be described.

[0213] An AV data and EMI are recorded or reproduced by execution of a command by the file accessing means 28 which performs a process by a command of the access system 3, or by execution of a command by the stream accessing means 29 which performs a process by a command of the access system 2. By contrast, in the case where a command of the access system 1 for handling a data different from an AV data, such as a computer data is supported, when a result of the authentication completion judging means 44 shows that authentication with respect to an apparatus that performs a process by a command of the access system 1 has not been completed, a command of the access system 1 is prevented from being executed, and, only when authentication has succeeded, a command of the access system 1 can be executed. Even when the user area is not divided into two kinds of areas unlike Embodiment 6, therefore, it is possible to support the access system 1. In a disk apparatus, particularly, the access system 1 is necessary for a test during production, and measurement of the performance of the disk apparatus, and, when configured in the same manner as the embodiment, it is possible to support the access system 1.

[0214] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI mixing means, the EMI separating means, and the data block accessing means of the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention.

(Embodiment 8)

[0215] Next, an eighth embodiment will be described.

[0216] In the embodiment, the case where EMI and an AV data cannot be accessed unless authentication has succeeded will be described.

[0217] In the embodiment, only portions which are different from the seventh embodiment will be described. In the stream controlling means 2 of Fig. 12, a changeover switch 59 is means for, in the case where the judgement result of the authentication completion judging means 44 shows that authentication has not yet succeeded, preventing the data block accessing means 27 from accessing the LBA accessing means 3, and for, in the case where authentication has succeeded, enabling the data block accessing means 27 to access the LBA accessing means 3.

[0218] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0219] In the operation of the embodiment, only portions which are different from the operation of the seventh embodiment will be described.

[0220] In the case where the judgement result of the authentication completion judging means 44 shows

that authentication has not yet succeeded, a changeover switch 59 prevents the data block accessing means 27 from exchanging data with the LBA accessing means 3. In the case where the authentication completion judging means 44 shows that authentication has succeeded, the changeover switch 59 enables the data block accessing means 27 to exchange data with the LBA accessing means 3. According to this configuration, further safety is ensured as compared with the case where, when authentication is not performed, a data is encrypted and then output.

[0221] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the inputting means in the invention, and the EMI mixing means, the EMI separating means, and the data block accessing means of the embodiment are examples of the recording and reproducing means in the invention. The components of the invention may be realized by dedicated hardware circuits, apparatuses, or the like for realizing their functions, or alternatively by means of software with using a computer.

[0222] Also a program recording medium which is characterized in that the medium stores a program for causing a computer to execute the whole or a part of the functions of the recording and reproducing apparatus of the invention belongs to the invention.

[0223] Furthermore, also a recording medium which is characterized in that EMI of the invention is recorded in the medium belongs to the invention.

(Embodiment 9)

[0224] Hereinafter, a ninth embodiment will be described.

[0225] In the embodiment, a hard disk apparatus will be described as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0226] In the embodiment, such a hard disk apparatus is realized by setting an AV data which has copy right information of "copy never" to be recordable, and by, using reproduction information managing means, enabling the AV data to be reproduced only once. The case where reproduction information used in the embodiment is recorded in an area different from a data block on a disk medium will be described.

[0227] The stream controlling means 2 of the hard disk apparatus shown in Fig. 1 is configured as shown in Fig. 26. Namely, the stream controlling means 2 is configured by EMI detecting means 209, EMI giving means 210, EMI accessing means 211, EMI judging means 212, authenticating and encrypting means 213, invalid data outputting means 214, file accessing means 215, stream accessing means 216, reproduction information managing means A 217, data block accessing means 218, and a changeover switch 219.

[0228] The EMI detecting means 209 is means for detecting a field in which EMI is described, from a header portion in an isochronous packet data which is input from the digital I/F means 1. The EMI giving means 210 is means for giving instructed EMI to a header portion in an isochronous packet data which is to be output to the digital I/F means 1. The EMI accessing means 211 is means for reading out detected EMI information via the LBA accessing means 3, and for recording and reproducing detected EMI information correspondingly with a designated data block. The EMI judging means 212 is means for judging the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right from the EMI information. The authenticating and encrypting means 213 is means for performing authentication among the AV apparatuses via the digital I/F means 1, for decoding an AV data which is input from the digital I/F means 1, and for encrypting an AV data which is read out from the disk medium 6 via the data block accessing means 218. The data block accessing means 218 is means for recording or reproducing data of a designated block number via the LBA accessing means 3, and for notifying the number of a block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211 and the reproduction information managing means A 217. The stream accessing means 216 is means for designating the number of a block which is to be recorded or reproduced, to the data block accessing means 218 in order to execute a command of the access system 2 which is received from the digital I/F means 1, for managing a stream pointer indicating the position of the block in which the stream currently exists, in accordance with instructions such as reproduction, recording, or stop while assuming the initial data block to the final data block of the user area of the disk medium 6 as one tape, and for performing recording or reading of stream pointer management information on the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The access system 2 is a system conforming to, for example, AV/C Digital Interface Command Set VCR subunit Specification version 2.0.1. The file accessing means 215 is means for designating the number of a block which is to be recorded or reproduced, to the data block accessing means 218 in order to execute a command of the access system 3 which is received from the digital I/F means 1, for managing the order configuration of names of files and plural data blocks constituting the files, and having file management information, for managing also a file pointer indicating the position of the current block in a file, in accordance with instructions such as reproduction, recording, or stop according to the command of the access system 3, and for performing recording or reading of information of the order configuration of data blocks of these files, file pointer information, and the like on the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The access system 3 is an accessing system which conforms to, for example, AV/C Digital Interface Command Set General Specification, and which controls an

AV apparatus by instructing the name of a file and the contents of the process on the file, such as reproduction, recording, or stop. The changeover switch 219 is means for, in outputting of an AV data to the digital I/F means 1 via the EMI giving means 210, when a result of the reproduction information managing means A 217 shows that reproduction has been performed, turning off the switch or changing the switch to the invalid data outputting means 214 to output an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen, and for, when reproduction has not yet been performed, changing the switch to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 to output an encrypted AV data. The reproduction information managing means A 217 is means for recording and reading out reproduction information corresponding to a designated data block, and for judging from the reproduction information whether reproduction has been performed or not.

[0229] The authenticating and encrypting means 213 of Fig. 26 is configured as shown in Fig. 27. Namely, the means is configured by decoding means 220, authenticating means 221, key producing means 222, encrypting means 223, a changeover switch 224, and a changeover switch 225.

[0230] The authenticating means 221 is means for performing authentication between AV apparatuses connected through the digital I/F means 1, and for, if authentication succeeds, when an AV data is to be output to the digital I/F means 1, transferring a key which is used in encryption by oneself, to the counter apparatus, and, when an AV data is to be input from the digital I/F means 1, receiving a key which is to be used in decoding by oneself, from the counter apparatus. The encrypting means 223 is means for encrypting an AV data which is read out from the disk medium 6 via the data block accessing means 218, by using the key produced by the key producing means 222, and for outputting the encrypted data to the digital I/F means 1. The key producing means 222 is means for producing a key which is to be used for encryption, and for transferring the key to the encrypting means 223 and the authenticating means 221. The decoding means 220 is means for decoding an encrypted AV data which is input from the digital I/F means 1, by using the key obtained in the authenticating means 221, and for outputting the decoded data to the data block accessing means 218. The switches 224 and 225 are means for, when the judgement result of the EMI judging means 212 shows that EMI is 00, performing switching so that an input/output data does not pass through the encrypting means 223 and the decoding means 220, and for, when EMI is other than 00, performing switching so that an input/output data passes through the encrypting means 223 and the decoding means 220.

[0231] The reproduction information managing means A 217 of Fig. 26 is configured as shown in Fig. 28. Namely, the means is configured by reproduction information updating means 226, already-reproduction

judging means 227, reproduction information producing means 228, reproduction information accessing means 229, and a changeover switch 230.

[0232] The reproduction information producing means 228 is means for producing reproduction information, and means for, for example, initializing an already-reproduction flag play_flag with 0. It is assumed that, when play_flag is 0, it means that a corresponding AV data has not yet been reproduced. The reproduction information updating means 226 is means for updating reproduction information to information indicating that the data has already been reproduced, and means for, for example, initializing the already-reproduction flag play_flag with 1. It is assumed that, when play_flag is 1, it means that a corresponding AV data has already been reproduced. The reproduction information accessing means 229 is means for storing reproduction information corresponding to data blocks in the form of a table, and for recording or reading out reproduction information onto the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The already-reproduction judging means 227 is means for judging whether reproduction has already been performed or not, based on the reproduction information which is read out by the reproduction information accessing means 229, and means for, when the already-reproduction flag play_flag is 1, for example, judging that reproduction has been performed one time, and for, in the case where it is judged that reproduction has not yet been performed when EMI is 11 or "copy never" from the EMI judgement result, changing over the switch 230 to update reproduction information (already-reproduction flag). The switch 230 is means for, if the already-reproduction judging means 227 judges that an AV data is to be newly recorded, switching to the side of the reproduction information producing means 228, and for, if it is judged during reproduction or the like that an AV data has already been recorded, switching to the side of the reproduction information updating means 226.

[0233] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0234] The case where a source apparatus sending an AV data is an STB will be described. There is a controller which sends a program reception command, a record start command, a record stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the hard disk apparatus, and the STB departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0235] First, it is assumed that the controller sends to the STB a reception start command for starting reception of a program which is sent from a broadcasting station, and the record start command to the hard disk apparatus. The case where an AV data which is sent from an apparatus other than the STB, for example, a recording and reproducing apparatus such as a DVHS or a hard disk apparatus is to be received will be

described later. Then, the program which is sent from a broadcasting station is received by the STB, and EMI is given to the program. Thereafter, the program is sent as an isochronous packet data to the IEEE 1394 bus. When the hard disk apparatus receives the record start command in the form of a command of the access system 2 or the access system 3 from the digital I/F means 1, the digital I/F means 1 confirms the number of a channel which is intended to be acquired by oneself, and fetches the corresponding isochronous packet data. It is assumed that the record start command in the form of a command of the access system 2 is received. Then, the authenticating means 221 sends an authentication command to the STB. The EMI detecting means 209 detects EMI information held in the header portion of the fetched isochronous packet data. The EMI judging means 212 judges the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right from the detected EMI information. The result is input to the authenticating and encrypting means 213. The authenticating means 221 determines the authentication method in accordance with the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right. When EMI is 11 or "copy never," the significance of the AV data is high, and hence authentication based on a public key is performed. When EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," the significance of the AV data is not higher than that in the case where EMI is 11, and hence authentication based on a common key is performed. When EMI is 00 or "copy free," the AV data is not significant. Therefore, it is deemed that authentication succeeds, without performing authentication. Upon receiving the authentication command, the STB performs authentication based on a public key or a common key between the STB and the hard disk apparatus. When the authentication succeeds, the key is transferred to the hard disk apparatus. The authenticating means 221 receives the key sent from the STB, via the digital I/F means 1, and then transfers the key to the decoding means 220. When EMI is 00, however, the authenticating means 221 does not receive the key sent from the STB. In this case, the AV data itself is not encrypted. In the cases where EMI is 11 and where EMI is 10, the decoding means 220 receives the key from the authenticating means 221.

[0236] It is assumed that the record command is received in the form of a command of the access system 2 via the digital I/F means 1. The subsequent process will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 34. When EMI of the AV data sent via the digital I/F means 1 is not 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 220. When EMI is 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 220. The decoding means 220 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to record block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently

accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211. The EMI accessing means 211 records the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 209, correspondingly with the notified block number. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," when the EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6, recording is performed while rewriting EMI to 01 or "no more copy." The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the reproduction information managing means A 217. During recording, the changeover switch 230 is switched to the side of the reproduction information producing means 228. The reproduction information accessing means 229 stores reproduction information in the form of a table, correspondingly with the notified block number ($= x$). The reproduction information producing means 228 registers information that the data has not yet been reproduced, into reproduction information. Namely, reproduction information is updated with $\text{play_flag} = 0$ (S1). Next, the reproduction information accessing means 229 records reproduction information onto the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S2). Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S3). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S4). If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0237] Next, the case where the hard disk apparatus reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded in the hard disk apparatus was recorded from the STB. There is a controller which sends a reproduction start command, a reproduction stop command, and the like to an apparatus coupled via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands among the controller, the hard disk apparatus, and the television monitor departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0238] First, the controller sends the reproduction start command to the television monitor, and the reproduction start command to the hard disk apparatus also. In the hard disk apparatus, thereafter, the data block accessing means 218 notifies the accessing place to the reproduction information managing means A 217 and the EMI accessing means 211. The EMI accessing means 211 fetches EMI information of the notified accessing place, and transfers the EMI information to the EMI giving means 210. The changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 214 to transfer an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen to the EMI giving means 210. The EMI giving means 210 sends the EMI information transferred from the EMI accessing means 211,

and the AV data transferred from the invalid data outputting means 214, as an isochronous packet data to the IEEE 1394 bus via the digital I/F means 1. The television monitor sends an authentication command to the hard disk apparatus. The television monitor fetches the isochronous packet data sent from the hard disk apparatus, and determines the authentication method while referring the EMI information given to the data. When EMI is 11 or "copy never," the authenticating means 221 performs authentication with respect to the television monitor based on a public key via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the authenticating means 221 performs authentication based on a common key with respect to the television monitor via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI is 00, authentication is not performed, and it is deemed that authentication succeeds. The embodiment handles the case where a data which is obtained by recording an AV data sent from the STB is reproduced. Therefore, all AV data in which EMI is 10 or "copy one generation" are recorded while rewriting EMI to 01. When the hard disk apparatus receives the authentication command via the digital I/F means 1, the authenticating means 221 determines the kind of authentication while referring the EMI information, and performs authentication with respect to the television monitor. When authentication succeeds, the authenticating means 221 transfers the key which is produced by the key producing means 222, to the encrypting means 223. When EMI is 00, the key is not transferred to the encrypting means 223, and the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223. Furthermore, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213.

[0239] The subsequent operation is either of two kinds of operations depending on the timing when the reproduction information managing means A 217 updates reproduction information. In the first case, reproduction information is collectively updated after reproduction is ended, and, in the second case, reproduction information is updated during reproduction in the unit of block.

[0240] The first case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 34.

[0241] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x . The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211 and the reproduction information managing means A 217. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S5). The EMI accessing means 211 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI infor-

information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 212. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the already-reproduction judging means 227.

[0242] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S6), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data is output without being encrypted (S8). When EMI is not 00 (S6), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223. During reproduction, the changeover switch 230 is switched to the side of the reproduction information updating means 226. The already-reproduction judging means 227 checks the judgement result of the read out EMI information.

[0243] When EMI is 11, the already-reproduction judging means 227 judges whether the AV data has been reproduced or not (S7). In the case where EMI is 11 or "copy never" and reproduction has been performed, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 214 to output an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen (S10). In the case where EMI is 211 or "copy never" and reproduction has not yet been performed or EMI is not 11, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213, and the AV data is encrypted by the encrypting means 223 and then output via the digital I/F means 1 (S8).

[0244] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S9). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S11). If another command is received, the process is ended. When the reproduction process is ended, reproduction information from the initial number to the final number of reproduced blocks is accessed by the reproduction information accessing means 229, and updated by the reproduction information updating means 226 to already-reproduction or $\text{play_flag} = 1$ (S12). If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced in the first case has been described.

[0245] The second case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 35.

[0246] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x . The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211 and the reproduction information managing means A 217. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing

means 3 (S17). The EMI accessing means 211 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 212. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the already-reproduction judging means 227.

[0247] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S18), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data passes through the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the digital I/F means 1 and is then output without being encrypted (S21). When EMI is not 00 (S18), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223. During reproduction, the changeover switch 230 is switched to the side of the reproduction information updating means 226. The already-reproduction judging means 227 checks the judgement result of the read out EMI information.

[0248] When EMI is not 00, it is judged whether the AV data has been reproduced or not (S19). In the case where EMI is 11 or "copy never" and reproduction has been performed or $\text{play_flag} = 1$, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 214 to output an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen (S22). In the case where the already-reproduction judging means 227 judges that EMI is 11 or "copy never" and reproduction has not yet been performed or $\text{play_flag} = 0$, the reproduction information updating means 226 updates reproduction information so as to indicate that the data has been reproduced or $\text{play_flag} = 1$ (S20). Next, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213, so that the AV data which is read out by the data block accessing means 218 is encrypted by the encrypting means 223, and then output via the digital I/F means 1 (S21). Furthermore, reproduction information of block x is updated by the reproduction information accessing means 229 (S23). Then, block x is set to $x + 1$ (S24), and, if a command other than the reproduction command is received (S25), the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received.

[0249] The case where an AV data is to be reproduced in the second case has been described.

[0250] In the case where EMI of an AV data recorded on a hard disk is 11 or "copy never," the AV data of "copy never" is allowed to be reproduced only once, by switching over the changeover switch 219 in accordance with judgement by the reproduction information managing means A 217, and managing reproduction information by the reproduction information managing means A 217.

[0251] In the embodiment, the case where a com-

mand is executed in the access system 2 by the stream accessing means 216 has been described. Alternatively, a command may be executed in the access system 3 by the file accessing means 215. In this case, the order of recording and reproduction depends not on the order of block numbers, but on that of blocks which are managed by file management information. Namely, when a block which is to be recorded or reproduced in an x-th process is expressed by $f(x)$, it is requested only to replace the description portion of block x in Fig. 34 or 35, with block $f(x)$.

[0252] Implementation may be enabled while selecting the authentication method in accordance with EMI. Namely, two kinds of authentication methods are used. As the authentication method for "copy never" in the case where EMI is 11, authentication of method A is used. As the authentication method for "copy one generation" in the case where EMI is 10 and "no more copy" in the case where EMI is 01, authentication of method B is used. Specifically, authentication based on a public key can be used as authentication of method A, and authentication based on a common key can be used as authentication of method B. An apparatus which does not record an AV data, such as a television monitor or an STB supports both authentications of methods A and B, and an apparatus which records an AV data, such as a VTR supports only authentication of method B. The hard disk apparatus of the invention supports both authentications of methods A and B. It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus of the invention records an AV data sent from an STB. Since an STB and the hard disk apparatus of the invention support both authentications of methods A and B, authentication succeeds in the case where EMI is not 00, and the AV data can be recorded into the hard disk apparatus of the invention. During reproduction of the hard disk apparatus of the invention, in the case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor, when EMI is 11 or "copy never," authentication succeeds and the AV data can be output to the television monitor because the television monitor supports authentication of method A. Since a television monitor does not record an AV data, the copy right of "copy never" can be protected. Also in the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation" or EMI is 01 or "no more copy," authentication succeeds and the AV data can be output to the television monitor because the television monitor supports authentication of method B. By contrast, in the case where an AV data of EMI of 11 or "copy never" is to be output to a VTR, the hard disk apparatus of the invention tries to perform authentication of method A. However, the authentication fails because a VTR supports only authentication of method B. Therefore, an AV data of EMI of 11 cannot be recorded into a VTR. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation" or EMI is 01 or "no more copy," however, authentication of method B is performed. Since a VTR supports authentication of method B, the authentication succeeds. In the case where EMI is 10 or

"copy one generation," an AV data can be recorded into a VTR. In the case where EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the authentication succeeds, but, judging from EMI information, the AV data is not recorded because a VTR is not allowed to record "no more copy." A case may be considered where there are two hard disk apparatuses of the invention, one of the hard disk apparatuses outputs an AV data of EMI of 11 or "copy never" (this hard disk device is called disk apparatus A), and the other hard disk apparatus records the above-mentioned AV data (this hard disk device is called disk apparatus B). In this case, the disk apparatuses mutually perform authentication of method A, and the AV data can be transferred from disk apparatus A to disk apparatus B. At this time, disk apparatus A outputs only once the AV data. Therefore, disk apparatus A cannot output the AV data no more time. As a result, the AV data is moved from disk apparatus A to disk apparatus B. However, the data movement destination is not a television monitor, and hence the user cannot view or listen the AV data during this period. Namely, AV data movement is enabled. In this way, the copy right can be easily protected.

[0253] The case where an AV data which is sent from an apparatus other than the STB is to be recorded into the hard disk apparatus of the invention as described above will be described. In AV data sent from the STB, there is no data in which EMI is 01 or "no more copy." In the case where a data is sent from an apparatus other than the STB, also an AV data in which EMI is "no more copy" exists. In the case where EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the AV data and the EMI information are prevented from being recorded onto the disk medium 6, by the data block accessing means 218 and the EMI accessing means 211. The others are identical with those of the case where an AV data sent from the STB is to be recorded. In the case where reproduction and recording are to be performed between the hard disk apparatuses of the invention, an AV data of EMI of 11 or "copy never" can be moved from a reproducing apparatus to a recording apparatus.

[0254] When EMI is other than 11, the operation is identical with that in the case where the hard disk apparatus of the invention and a VTR are connected to each other. As described above, the method of authentication is selected in accordance with EMI, whereby an AV data of higher significance such as "copy never" can be authenticated by using a safer authentication method such as a public key.

[0255] As an example of storing reproduction information and an AV data onto a disk medium, the following two cases will be described.

[0256] First, the case where reproduction information is provided in the unit of block will be described. Referring to Fig. 29, the disk medium 6 is divided into a system area 231 and a user area 232. The system area 231 is an area which is used by the system and cannot be accessed by the user. By contrast, the user area 232 is an area which the user uses. It is assumed that the

user area 232 consists of a k number of blocks. A reproduction information recording portion 233 is disposed in a part of the system area 231. Reproduction information of each block is recorded into the reproduction information recording portion 233. Referring to a table which is stored in the form of a bit map of the reproduction information recording portion (233), all reproduction information of block 1 (234), block 2 (235), block 3 (236), and block k (237) is 0. Namely, this shows that the area has not yet been reproduced. However, areas such as the block k (237) are areas which have not yet been used. It is assumed that, with respect to an unused area also, reproduction information is set to 0. Since reproduction information of block 211, block 212, and block 213 is 1, they are already-reproduced areas. The reproduction information recording portion 231 is produced and updated by the reproduction information managing means A 217. Since the reproduction information recording portion 233 is stored in the system area 231, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the reproduction information recording portion 233, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the hard disk having the function of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0257] Next, the case where reproduction information is managed by means of an address will be described. Referring to Fig. 30, the disk medium 6 is divided into a system area 238 and a user area 239. The system area 238 is an area which is used by the system and cannot be accessed by the user. By contrast, the user area 239 is an area which the user uses. A stream is defined while dividing data each time when reproduction information is changed from already-reproduced to not-yet-reproduced or from not-yet-reproduced to already-reproduced. A reproduction information recording portion 240 is configured so as to express reproduction information by reproduction information of the stream, and the start LBA and the end LBA of the stream. In stream 1 (241), the start LBA is 0[sic: a0], the end LBA is a1, and the entire stream is not-yet-reproduced. In stream 2 (242), the start LBA is a1, the end LBA is a2, and the entire stream is already-reproduced. In stream 3 (243), the start LBA is a2, the end LBA is a3, and the stream is not-yet-reproduced. In stream n (244), the start LBA is a4, the end LBA is a5, and reproduction information of the stream is already-reproduced. The reproduction information recording portion 240 is produced and updated by the reproduction information managing means A 217. Since the reproduction information recording portion 240 is stored in the system area 238, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the portion, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0258] The reproduction information recording portion 233 or 240 may be placed in, in the case of a hard disk apparatus, an alternate sector area in place of the system area 231 or 238.

[0259] The embodiment described above may be implemented also in an optical disk apparatus (such as a DVD-RAM), in place of using a hard disk apparatus. At this time, in the case where an optical disk apparatus is used, the reproduction information recording portion 233 or 240 may be an area which the user cannot unauthorizedly access, or, in the case of a DVD-R as shown in Fig. 24, may be an area which is called a power calibration area (PCA) and which is used in test writing for adjustment of the laser power or the like, or an area which is called a recording management area (RMA) where information of an after-writing position and the like are recorded in the case where a data is after-written. Alternatively, a lead-in area where TOC information and the like are recorded, or a lead-out area indicating the end may be used. As shown in Fig. 25, in the case of a DVD-RAM, a header portion where ID information for each sector and the like are recorded may be used in addition to the above-mentioned areas. In a DVD-RAM also, recording may be performed in an alternate sector area. In summary, reproduction information may be recorded in any area in which the user cannot directly change a data, irrespective of the type of the recording apparatus.

[0260] Furthermore, EMI information is recorded onto and reproduced from the disk medium 6 by the EMI accessing means 211 via the LBA accessing means. When, in the same manner as reproduction information, EMI information is recorded in an area such as the system area of the disk medium 6 in which the user cannot directly change a data, the user cannot easily tamper with EMI information, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment has high reliability.

(Embodiment 10)

[0261] Next, a tenth embodiment will be described.

[0262] In the embodiment, a hard disk apparatus will be described as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0263] In the embodiment, such a hard disk apparatus is realized by setting an AV data which has copy right information of "copy never" to be recordable, and by, using reproduction information managing means, enabling the AV data to be reproduced only once.

[0264] In the ninth embodiment, reproduction information is recorded in an area different from a data block. In the embodiment, reproduction information is recorded in the same area as a data block.

[0265] Hereinafter, the configuration will be described with respect to portions which are different from the ninth embodiment.

[0266] Referring to Fig. 31, reproduction informa-

tion managing means B 245 is means for reading out and updating reproduction information corresponding to a designated data block, and for judging from the reproduction information whether reproduction has been performed or not. Reproduction information producing and EMI mixing means 246 is means for pairing EMI information and reproduction information with a data block, and for initializing reproduction information so as to indicate a not-yet-reproduced state. Reproduction information and EMI separating means 247 is means for separating and extracting EMI information and reproduction information, and a data block which are paired.

[0267] The reproduction information managing means B 245 is configured in the following manner. Namely, the reproduction information managing means B 45 is configured by reproduction information updating means 226, already-reproduction judging means 227, reproduction information accessing means 229, and a changeover switch 248.

[0268] The reproduction information updating means 226 is means for updating reproduction information to information indicating that the data has already been reproduced, and means for, for example, updating the information with already-reproduction flag play_flag = 1. The reproduction information accessing means 229 is means for updating reproduction information corresponding to data blocks, for performing recording on the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3, and for storing reproduction information corresponding to data blocks in the form of a table, and having a caching function. The already-reproduction judging means 227 is means for judging whether reproduction has already been performed or not, based on the reproduction information which is read out by the reproduction information accessing means 229, and means for, when the already-reproduction flag play_flag = 1, for example, judging that reproduction has been performed one time, and for, in the case where EMI = 11 and it is judged that reproduction has not yet been performed from the EMI judgement result, changing over the changeover switch 248 to the side of the reproduction information updating means 226 to update reproduction information. The already-reproduction judging means 227 is means for, in the case where EMI = 11 and it is judged that reproduction has already been performed, turning off the changeover switch 219, or changing to the invalid data outputting means 214.

[0269] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0270] In the embodiment, it is assumed that, in the same manner as the ninth embodiment, a hard disk apparatus records and reproduces an AV data sent from an STB. Authentication and key exchange between an STB and the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0271] It is assumed that the record command is received in the form of a command of the access sys-

tem 2 via the digital I/F means 1. The subsequent process will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 34. When EMI of the sent AV data is not 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 220. When EMI is 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 220. The decoding means 220 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to record block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the reproduction information managing means B 245. The EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 209 is subjected in the EMI judging means 212 to judgement on the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right. Thereafter, the judgement result is transferred to the reproduction information producing and EMI mixing means 246. The reproduction information producing and EMI mixing means 246 pairs EMI information and reproduction information with a data block, and initializes reproduction information so as to indicate a not-yet-reproduced state. Namely, the already-reproduction flag of reproduction information is set to play_flag = 0 (S1). When EMI is 210 or "copy one generation," EMI is rewritten to 01 or "no more copy." The reproduction information producing and EMI mixing means 246 transfers a data in which an AV data, reproduction information, and EMI information are paired to the data block accessing means 218. The data block accessing means 218 stores the paired data into block x of the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 8 (S2). The format of the recording in block x will be described later. Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S3). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S4). If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0272] Next, the case where the hard disk apparatus reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded on the hard disk was recorded from the STB. The authentication and key exchange between the television monitor and the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0273] The subsequent operation is either of two kinds of operations depending on the timing when the reproduction information managing means B 245 updates reproduction information. In the first case, reproduction information is collectively updated after reproduction is ended, and, in the second case, repro-

duction information is updated during reproduction in the unit of block. Initially, the first case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 34.

[0274] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the reproduction information managing means 245. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data in which EMI information and reproduction information are paired, from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S5). The reproduction information and EMI separating means 247 separates EMI information and reproduction information from the paired data. The EMI information is transferred to the EMI giving means 210 and the EMI judging means 212, and the reproduction information is transferred to the already-reproduction judging means 227. The EMI judging means 212 judges the EMI information. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the already-reproduction judging means 227.

[0275] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S6), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data is output without being encrypted (S8). When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223. Only when EMI = 11, the changeover switch 248 is switched during reproduction to the side of the reproduction information updating means 226. The already-reproduction judging means 227 checks the judgement result of the read out EMI information.

[0276] In the case where EMI is 211 or "copy never," the already-reproduction judging means 227 judges whether the AV data has been reproduced or not (S7). In the case where EMI is 211 or "copy never" and reproduction has been performed, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 214 to output an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen (S10). In the case where EMI is 211 or "copy never" and reproduction has not yet been performed, or the case where EMI is not 211, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213, and the AV data is encrypted by the encrypting means 223, and then output via the digital I/F means 1 (S8).

[0277] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S9). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S11). If another command is received, the process is ended. When the reproduction process is ended, reproduction information from the initial number to the final number of reproduced blocks is accessed by

the reproduction information accessing means 229, and updated by the reproduction information updating means 226 to already-reproduction or $\text{play_flag} = 1$ (S12). If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced in the first case has been described.

[0278] The second case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 35.

[0279] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the reproduction information accessing means 229. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data which is paired with EMI information and reproduction information, from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S17). The reproduction information and EMI separating means 247 separates EMI information and reproduction information from the paired AV data. The EMI information is transferred to the EMI giving means 210 and the EMI judging means 212, and the reproduction information is transferred to the already-reproduction judging means 227. The EMI judging means 212 judges the EMI information. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the already-reproduction judging means 227.

[0280] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S18), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data is provided with EMI information by the EMI giving means 210 without passing through the authenticating and encrypting means 213, and then output via the digital I/F means 1 without being encrypted (S21). When EMI is not 00 (S18), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223. During reproduction, the changeover switch 230 is switched to the side of the reproduction information updating means 226. The already-reproduction judging means 227 checks the judgement result of the read out EMI information.

[0281] When EMI is 11 or "copy never," it is judged whether the AV data has been reproduced or not (S19). In the case where EMI is 11 or "copy never" and reproduction has been performed or $\text{play_flag} = 1$, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 214 to output an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen (S22). In the case where the already-reproduction judging means 227 judges that EMI is 11 or "copy never" and the data has not yet been reproduced or $\text{play_flag} = 0$, the reproduction information updating means 226

updates reproduction information so as to indicate that the data has been reproduced or $\text{play_flag} = 1$ (S20). Next, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213, so that the AV data which is read out by the data block accessing means 218 is encrypted by the encrypting means 223, provided with EMI by the EMI giving means 210, and then output via the digital I/F means 1 (S21). Furthermore, reproduction information of block x is updated by the reproduction information accessing means 229 (S23). Then, block x is set to $x + 1$ (S24), and, if a command other than the reproduction command is received (S25), the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received.

[0282] The case where an AV data is to be reproduced in the second case has been described.

[0283] The format of a data which, as described above, is produced by the reproduction information producing and EMI mixing means 246 and updated by the reproduction information managing means B 245 will be described. Fig. 33 shows the user area of the disk medium 6. The user area is divided into a k number of blocks, or block 1 (249), block 2 (250), block 3 (251), ..., and block k (252). In block 1, EMI 253 is stored, reproduction information 254 is subsequently stored, and an AV data 255 is finally stored. Reproduction information indicates that, when already-reproduction flag $\text{play_flag} = 0$, reproduction has not yet been performed, and, when $\text{play_flag} = 1$, reproduction has already been performed. When EMI information, reproduction information and AV data are stored in the same area with being paired with each other, three kinds of information can be processed by a single access to a disk medium, and hence overhead of access to a disk medium is reduced.

[0284] The tenth embodiment described above is configured so that an AV data and reproduction information are mixed with each other by the reproduction information producing and EMI mixing means 246, and the AV data and the reproduction information are separated from each other by the reproduction information and EMI separating means 247, thereby preventing the user from directly changing reproduction information via the digital I/F means 1 even when reproduction information is not recorded in a system area (is recorded in a user area) unlike the ninth embodiment. Therefore, reproduction information is prevented from being unauthorizedly tampered with, and the hard disk of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0285] The tenth embodiment may be implemented while EMI information is recorded in a system area separately from reproduction information. Conversely, the ninth embodiment may be implemented while, in the same manner as the tenth embodiment, only EMI information is recorded in a user area and reproduction information is recorded in a system area. Namely, reproduction information and EMI information may be

recorded by an appropriate one of the methods which have been described in the ninth embodiment and the tenth embodiment.

5 (Embodiment 11)

[0286] Hereinafter, an eleventh embodiment will be described.

[0287] In the embodiment, a hard disk apparatus will be described as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0288] In the embodiment, such a hard disk apparatus is realized by setting an AV data which has copy right information of "copy never" to be recordable, and, by erasing an AV data during or after reproduction, to enable the AV data to be reproduced only once.

[0289] Hereinafter, the configuration will be described with respect to portions which are different from the ninth embodiment.

[0290] The configuration of the embodiment is shown in Fig. 48. The configuration is different from that of Fig. 26 used in the ninth embodiment only in the following points. Namely, the configuration is not provided with the reproduction information managing means A and the invalid data outputting means. It is assumed that the changeover switch 219 is always connected to the side of the output of an encrypted data. It is assumed that the data block accessing means can input a judgement result of the EMI judging means and perform accessing according to the result.

[0291] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0292] In the embodiment, it is assumed that, in the same manner as the ninth embodiment, a hard disk apparatus records and reproduces an AV data sent from an STB. Authentication and key exchange between an STB and the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0293] It is assumed that the record command is received in the form of a command of the access system 2 via the digital I/F means 1. The subsequent process will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 46. When EMI of the sent AV data is not 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 220. When EMI is 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 220. The decoding means 220 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to record block x . The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211.

The EMI accessing means 211 records the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 209, correspondingly with the notified block number. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," when the EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6, recording is performed while rewriting EMI to 01 or "no more copy" (S50).

[0294] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S51). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S52). If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0295] Next, the case where the hard disk apparatus reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded on the hard disk was recorded from the STB. Authentication and key exchange between the television monitor and the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0296] The subsequent operation is either of two kinds of operations depending on the timing when an AV data is erased. In the first case, AV data are collectively erased after reproduction is ended, and, in the second case, an AV data is erased during reproduction in the unit of block.

[0297] The first case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 46.

[0298] First, initialization is performed with an erasure flag = "false" of all blocks (S53). The erasure flag is a flag which corresponds to a block in a one to one relationship. The erasure flag = "true" means that the corresponding block must be erased later.

[0299] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x . The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S54). The EMI accessing means 211 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 212. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213.

[0300] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S55), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data is output with-

out being encrypted (S57). When EMI is not 00 (S55), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223.

[0301] When EMI is 11, the erasure flag corresponding to the block number is rewritten to "true." When EMI is not 00, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213, so that the AV data is encrypted by the encrypting means 223, and then output via the digital I/F means 1 (S57).

[0302] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S58). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S59). If another command is received, the process is ended. When the reproduction process is ended, with respect to a block of an erasure flag = "true" among the reproduced blocks from the initial number to the final number, an AV data is erased or link information to the recording position of block x on the disk is erased (S60). If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced in the first case has been described.

[0303] The second case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 47.

[0304] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x . The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S64). The EMI accessing means 211 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 212. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the already-reproduction judging means 227.

[0305] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S66), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data passes through the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the digital I/F means 1 and is then output without being encrypted. When EMI is not 00 (S66), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223. Next, the changeover switch 219 is switched to the side of the authenticating and encrypting means 213, so that the AV data which is read out by the data block accessing means 218 is encrypted by the encrypting means 223, and then output via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI of

block x is 11, the data block accessing means 218 erases block x, writes an invalid data, or erases link information to the recording position of block x on the disk (S67). Then, block x is set to $x + 1$ (S68), and, if a command other than the reproduction command is received (S69), the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received.

[0306] The case where an AV data is to be reproduced in the second case has been described.

[0307] In the case where EMI of an AV data recorded on a hard disk is 11 or "copy never," the AV data of "copy never" is allowed to be reproduced only once, by, after the AV data is output, erasing the data block of the AV data, writing an invalid data, or erasing link information to the recording position on the disk.

[0308] In the embodiment, the case where a command is executed in the access system 2 by the stream accessing means 216 has been described. Alternatively, a command may be executed in the access system 3 by the file accessing means 215. In this case, the order of recording and reproduction depends not on the order of block numbers, but on that of blocks which are managed by file management information. Namely, when a block which is to be recorded or reproduced in an x-th process is expressed by $f(x)$, it is requested only to replace the description portion of block x in Fig. 46 or 47, with block $f(x)$. Further, block x may be erased in the file management.

[0309] The embodiment may be implemented while, in the same manner as the tenth embodiment, EMI is recorded with being mixed with an AV data.

(Embodiment 12)

[0310] Next, a twelfth embodiment will be described.

[0311] In the embodiment, a VCR (Video Cassette Recorder) will be described as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0312] In the embodiment, such a VCR is realized by setting an AV data in which copy right information is "copy never" to be recordable, and allowing the AV data to be reproduced only once by using reproduction information managing means.

[0313] Fig. 36 shows the basic configuration of a VCR. The VCR is configured by digital I/F means 1, stream controlling means 290, memory accessing means 256, recording and reproducing means 257, controlling means 258, a head 260, a memory 259, and a tape medium 261.

[0314] The digital I/F means 1 is identical with that

described in the ninth embodiment. With respect to the stream controlling means 290, only portions which are different from those described in the ninth embodiment will be described later. The memory accessing means 256 is means for recording and reproducing EMI information and reproduction information and the like with respect to the memory 259 disposed in the tape medium 261. The recording and reproducing means 257 is means for signal processing a reproduced signal from the head 260, and outputting a digital AV data, and for signal processing an AV data sent from the stream controlling means 290, and sending a record signal to the head 260. The controlling means 258 is means for controlling running of the tape medium 261, tracking of the head 260, and controlling the recording and reproducing means 257. The head 260 records a signal onto the tape medium 261, or reproduces a signal on the tape medium 261. The memory 259 is incorporated into the tape medium 261, and records and reproduces EMI information, reproduction information, and the like.

[0315] The portions of the stream controlling means 290 which are different from the ninth embodiment will be described with reference to Fig. 37 as described above. Command executing means 262 is means for executing a command received from the digital I/F means 1, or means for interpreting the contents of the command, and for instructing the controlling means 258 to perform reproduction, recording, stop, and the like. For example, such a command which is sent to the digital I/F means 1 is a system conforming to AV/C digital Interface Command Set VCR subunit Specification version 2.0.1 and the like. The recording and reproducing means 257 is an alternative of the data block accessing means 218 in the ninth embodiment. The recording and reproducing means 257 is means for notifying the number of a track which is currently recorded or reproduced, to the reproduction information managing means A.

[0316] When, in the operation of the ninth embodiment, "block" is replaced with "track," and the file accessing means 215 and the stream accessing means 216 are replaced with the command executing means 262, the operation of the embodiment is identical with that of the ninth embodiment. As a result, a VCR is realized in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0317] As an example of storing reproduction information and an AV data onto the tape medium 261, the following two cases will be described.

[0318] First, the case where reproduction information is provided in the unit of track will be described. Referring to Fig. 38, the tape medium 261 is configured by a k number of tracks. The memory 259 is incorporated into the tape medium 261. A reproduction information recording portion 267 is recorded into the memory

259. Referring to a table which is stored in the form of a bit map in the reproduction information recording portion 267, all reproduction information of track 1 (263), track 2 (264), track 3 (265), and track k (266) is 0. Namely, this shows that the area has not yet been reproduced. However, areas such as the track k (266) are areas which have not yet been used. It is assumed that, with respect to an unused area also, reproduction information is set to 0. Since reproduction information of track 211, track 212, and track 213 is 1, they are already-reproduced areas. The reproduction information recording portion 267 is produced and updated by the reproduction information managing means A 217. Since the reproduction information recording portion 267 is stored in the memory 259 incorporated into the tape medium 261, the user cannot easily tamper with contents of the reproduction information recording portion 267, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the VCR of the embodiment has high reliability.

[0319] Next, the case where reproduction information is managed by means of an address will be described. Referring to Fig. 39, a stream is defined while, in the portion of the whole tape 273 of the tape medium 261, dividing data each time when reproduction information is changed from already-reproduced to not-yet-reproduced or from not-yet-reproduced to already-reproduced. The reproduction information recording portion 267 is expressed by a pair of reproduction information of the stream, and the start track and the end track of the stream. In stream 1 (269), the start track is 0[sic: a0], the end track is a1, and the entire stream is not-yet-reproduced. In stream 2 (270), the start track is a1, the end track is a2, and the entire stream is already-reproduced. In stream 3 (271), the start track is a2, the end track is a3, and the stream is not-yet-reproduced. In stream n (272), the start track is a4, the end track is a5, and reproduction information of the stream is already-reproduced. The reproduction information recording portion 267 is produced and updated by the reproduction information managing means A 217. Since the reproduction information recording portion 267 is stored in the memory 259 of the tape medium 261, the user cannot easily tamper with the contents of the reproduction information recording portion 267, so that an AV data cannot be unauthorizedly viewed or listened. Therefore, the VCR of the embodiment has high reliability.

(Embodiment 13)

[0320] Next, a thirteenth embodiment will be described.

[0321] In the embodiment, a VCR will be described as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be

viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast. In the embodiment, unlike the twelfth embodiment, EMI information is stored onto a tape with being paired with an AV data. Such a VCR is realized by setting an AV data which has copy right information of "copy never" to be recordable, and by erasing the AV data while reproducing.

[0322] Fig. 40 shows the basic configuration of a VCR. As shown in Fig. 36, the VCR of the twelfth embodiment is recording and reproducing means. By contrast, the embodiment is different from the twelfth embodiment in that reproducing means and recording means are separately configured, a recording head and a reproducing head are separately disposed in a head, and separating means and mixing means are disposed. The VCR is configured by digital I/F means 1, stream controlling means 291, separating means 277, reproducing means 278, mixing means 279, recording means 280, controlling means 281, a head 274, a recording head 275, a reproducing head 276, and a tape medium 261.

[0323] The digital I/F means 1 is identical with that described in the ninth embodiment. With respect to the configuration of the stream controlling means 291, only portions which are different from those described in the twelfth embodiment will be described later. The separating means 277 is means for separating a data read out from the reproducing means 278, into EMI information and an AV data. The mixing means 279 is means for pairing EMI information and an AV data. The reproducing means 278 is means for reproducing EMI information and an AV data recorded on the tape medium 261, via the reproducing head 276 of the head 274. The recording means 280 is means for recording EMI information and an AV data onto the tape medium 261, via the recording head 275 of the head 274. The head 274 is configured by the recording head 275 and the reproducing head 276, and is means for reproducing a signal recorded on the tape medium 261 by means of the reproducing head 276, and recording a signal onto the tape medium 261 by means of the recording head 275. The controlling means 281 is means for controlling running of the tape medium 261, tracking of the head 274, controlling the reproducing means 278, and the recording means 280. The tape medium 261 is a medium on which a signal is to be recorded.

[0324] The stream controlling means 291 is different from the twelfth embodiment as described above, in the following points. During recording a changeover switch 282 is switched so that an output data from the authenticating and encrypting means 213 is output as it is to the mixing means 279, and, during reproduction, switched to the invalid data outputting means 214 in the case where a judgement result of the EMI judging means 212 shows that EMI = 11. In the case where reproduction is being performed and EMI = 01 or 10, connection is not made with respect to both the authen-

ticating and encrypting means 213 and the invalid data outputting means 214. The command executing means 262 is means for notifying the changeover switch 282 of whether recording is being performed or reproduction is being performed, in addition to the contents which have been described in the twelfth embodiment. The reproduction information managing means A is not used in the embodiment.

[0325] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0326] In the embodiment, it is assumed that, in the same manner as the ninth embodiment, a VCR records and reproduces an AV data sent from an STB. Authentication and key exchange between an STB and the VCR of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0327] It is assumed that the command executing means 262 receives a record command via the digital I/F means 1. The command executing means 262 notifies the changeover switch 282 of the reception of the record command. Then, the changeover switch 282 is switched so that the sent AV data is transferred from the authenticating and encrypting means 213 to the mixing means 279. When EMI of the sent AV data is not 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 220. When EMI is 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 220. The decoding means 220 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the key received from the STB. The mixing means 279 receives the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 209, and also the AV data output from the authenticating and encrypting means 213 via the changeover switch 282. The mixing means 279 pairs the received EMI information and the AV data. Then, the recording means 280 records the paired AV data and EMI information onto the tape medium 261 via the recording head 275 of the head 274. In the case where EMI is 210 or "copy one generation," EMI information is recorded with rewriting EMI to 01 or "no more copy" when EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6. The format of the recording an AV data and EMI information onto the tape medium 261 will be described later. Such process is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the tape medium 261 has been described.

[0328] Next, the case where the VCR reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded on the VCR was recorded from the STB. Authentication and key exchange between the television monitor and the VCR of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0329] It is assumed that the VCR receives a repro-

duction command from the digital I/F means 1. The command executing means 262 notifies the changeover switch 282 of the reception of the reproduction command. Then, the changeover switch 282 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 282 in the case where the judgement result of the EMI judging means 212 is 211. In the case where EMI = 10 or 01, the changeover switch 282 is connected to none of the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the invalid data outputting means 214. The embodiment handles the case where a data which is obtained by recording an AV data sent from the STB is reproduced. Consequently, there is no AV data of EMI = 10. Namely, when data are to be recorded from an STB, any EMI of an AV data which is 10 is rewritten to 01. The separating means 277 separates the AV data and the EMI information which are reproduced from the tape medium 261 via the head 274 and the reproducing means 278. The AV data is transferred to the authenticating and encrypting means 213. The EMI information is transferred to the EMI giving means 210. Also the AV data which is derived via the authenticating and encrypting means 213 passes through the EMI giving means 210 to be provided with EMI therein, and is then output via the digital I/F means 1. Immediately after the separating means 277 separates the AV data and the EMI information, when EMI is 11, the mixing means 279 writes an invalid data into the tape medium 261 via the recording means 280 and the recording head 275 of the head 274 by means of the invalid data outputting means 214. The AV data on the tape medium 261 which is reproduced as describe above is rewritten with an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen. As a result, a VCR is realized in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0330] The format in which, as described above, an AV data and EMI information are recorded onto the tape medium 261 will be described.

[0331] As shown in Fig. 42, in a tape 284, recording is performed in the unit of track, and a track number 284 is added to a recorded track. One track is divided into an EMI information recording portion 285 and a data recording portion 286. The EMI information recording portion 285 records EMI information, and the data recording portion 286 records an AV data.

[0332] EMI information in the invention is not restricted that which is to be recorded into the EMI information recording portion of the embodiments described above. A memory may be mounted on a tape medium, and recording may be performed on the memory. According to this configuration, information is hardly tampered with, and the reliability of the system is improved.

(Embodiment 14)

[0333] Hereinafter, a fourteenth embodiment will be described.

[0334] In the embodiment, a hard disk apparatus will be described as an example of a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information of an AV data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never" that means copy inhibit, a program can be viewed or listened only once at an arbitrary time after a time zone when the program is broadcast.

[0335] In the embodiment, such a hard disk apparatus is realized by setting an AV data which has copy right information of "copy never" to be recordable, recording an AV data while reencrypting by second encrypting/decoding means, and, during reproduction, performing reproduction while erasing a key used in the second encrypting/decoding means.

[0336] Fig. 1 is a basic configuration view of the hard disk apparatus of the invention. This is identical with that described in the ninth embodiment. The stream controlling means 2 of the hard disk apparatus in Fig. 1 is configured as shown in Fig. 43. Namely, the stream controlling means 2 is configured by EMI detecting means 209, EMI giving means 210, EMI accessing means 211, EMI judging means 212, authenticating and encrypting means 213, file accessing means 215, stream accessing means 216, data block accessing means 218, time-variant key means 287, key accessing means 288, and second encrypting/decoding means 289.

[0337] With respect to the configuration of the stream controlling means 2, only portions which are different from the ninth embodiment will be described. The time-variant key means 287 is means for producing a key which is randomly changed with the passage of time, and means for transferring the produced key to the key accessing means 288 and the second encrypting/decoding means 289. The key accessing means 288 is means for storing the key produced in the time-variant key means 287, correspondingly with a corresponding data block, recording the key into the disk medium 6, and reading out the key from the disk medium 6. The second encrypting/decoding means 289 is means for encrypting or decoding an AV data based on the input key.

[0338] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0339] In the embodiment, it is assumed that, in the same manner as the ninth embodiment, a hard disk apparatus records and reproduces an AV data sent from an STB during recording. Authentication and key exchange between an STB and the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0340] It is assumed that the record command is received in the form of a command of the access system 2 via the digital I/F means 1. The subsequent process

will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 44. When EMI of the AV data sent via the digital I/F means 1 is not 00, the changeover switch 224 is switched so that the AV data passes through the decoding means 220. When EMI is 00, switching is performed so that the AV data does not pass through the decoding means 220. The decoding means 220 decodes the encrypted AV data by using the received key. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to record block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211. The EMI accessing means 211 records the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 209, correspondingly with the notified block number. In the case where EMI is 10 or "copy one generation," when the EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6, recording is performed while rewriting EMI to 01 or "no more copy." The time-variant key means 87 produces a key. The produced key is transferred to the key accessing means 288, and then recorded onto the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S26). The key is transferred also to the second encrypting/decoding means 289. The AV data received from the authenticating and encrypting means 213 is reencrypted, and the encrypted AV data is transferred to the data block accessing means 218, and then recorded onto the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S27).

[0341] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S28). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S29). If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0342] Next, the case where the hard disk apparatus reproduces an AV data will be described. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced on a television monitor will be considered. It is assumed that an AV data recorded on the hard disk was recorded from the STB. Authentication and key exchange between the television monitor and the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment are identical with those of the ninth embodiment, and hence their description is omitted.

[0343] The operation during reproduction is either of two kinds of operations depending on the timing when the key produced in the time-variant key means 287 is erased from the disk medium 6. In the first case, keys are collectively erased after reproduction is ended, and, in the second case, a key is erased during reproduction in the unit of block.

[0344] The first case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 44.

[0345] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a

command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 211 and the key accessing means 288. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S30). The EMI accessing means 211 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 212. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the key accessing means 288. The key accessing means 288 reads out the key of block x from the disk medium 6 (S31). The key accessing means 288 transfers the read out key to the second encrypting/decoding means 289. The second encrypting/decoding means 289 decodes the AV data of block x which is received from the data block accessing means 218 (S32). The key accessing means 288 sets the erasure flag of the key of block x to 0 (S33). When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S34), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data is output without being encrypted. When EMI is not 00 (S34), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223.

[0346] In the case where EMI is 11 or "copy never," or the case where EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the second encrypting/decoding means 289 transfers the decoded AV data of block x to the authenticating and encrypting means 213.

[0347] Thereafter, the key accessing means 288 sets the erasure flag of the key of block x to 1 (S35). Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S36). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S37). If another command is received, the process is ended. When the reproduction process is ended, the key accessing means erases keys of blocks of an erasure flag of 1 and from the initial number to the final number of blocks, only in the case where EMI is 11 (S38). The erasing means, for example, to overwrite the portion where the key is recorded, with an invalid data, or to erase link information to the recording position of the disk medium where the key is recorded.

[0348] The second case will be described with reference to the flowchart of Fig. 45.

[0349] It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction command in the form of a command of the access system 2 from the digital I/F means 1. The stream accessing means 216 instructs the data block accessing means 218 to reproduce block x. The data block accessing means 218 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to

the EMI accessing means 211 and the key accessing means 288. At the same time, the data block accessing means 218 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3 (S43). The EMI accessing means 211 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 212. The judgement result is sent to the authenticating and encrypting means 213 and the key accessing means 288. The key accessing means 288 reads out the key of block x from the disk medium 6 (S44). The key accessing means 288 transfers the read out key to the second encrypting/decoding means 289. The second encrypting/decoding means 289 decodes the AV data of block x which is received from the data block accessing means 218 (S45). When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is 00 (S46), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data does not pass through the encrypting means 223, and the AV data is output without being encrypted. When EMI is not 00 (S46), the changeover switch 225 is switched to the side in which the data passes through the encrypting means 223.

[0350] In the case where EMI is 11 or "no more copy," the second encrypting/decoding means 289 transfers the decoded AV data of block x to the authenticating and encrypting means 213. Thereafter, the key accessing means 288 erases the key of block x (S47). The erasing means to overwrite the portion where the key is recorded, with an invalid data, or to erase link information to the recording position of the disk medium where the key is recorded.

[0351] In the case where EMI is 01 or "no more copy," the second encrypting/decoding means 289 outputs the decoded AV data of block x. In this case, the key of block x is not erased (S47).

[0352] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set (S48). Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not (S49). If another command is received, the process is ended.

[0353] As described above, in the embodiment, an AV data is encrypted and then recorded into a medium. In an exchangeable medium such as a DVD-RAM, therefore, safety against unauthorized use can be enhanced as compared with the case where an AV data which is not encrypted is recorded.

[0354] In the method of recording a key in the embodiment, a key may be recorded with being paired with an AV data, or alternatively recorded separately from an AV data. In this case, a key may be recorded into an area such as a system area which the user cannot directly access. An area which the user cannot directly access is not restricted to this, and may be an alternate sector area, a PCA, an RMA, a lead-in, a lead-out, or a header portion on a DVD-RAM as described in the ninth embodiment. In summary, any area may be

useful as far as it is an area which the user cannot directly access a data. According to this configuration, there is no fear that the user accesses a data of a key to decrypt the key, and hence safety is improved.

[0355] In the embodiment, the method has been described in which reproduction is allowed only once by erasing a key during reproduction. Also when reproduction information for a key is managed, implementation can be performed. Specifically, information indicative of whether a key has already been read out or not is used as reproduction information of the key, and implementation is performed while managing the information in the same manner as reproduction information which has been described in the ninth or tenth embodiment, thereby allowing the key to be read out only once. As a result, during reproduction, an AV data which is encrypted and then recorded into a recording medium can be reproduced only once.

[0356] When also reproduction information of a key is recorded into an area which the user cannot access as described above, safety is further improved.

[0357] In the ninth to fourteenth embodiments, the apparatuses in which an AV data of EMI = 11 of "copy never" can be reproduced only once have been described. In the case where an AV data of EMI = 10 of "copy one generation" is recorded with being set to that of EMI = 01 of "no more copy," the AV data can be moved between apparatuses by reproducing only once the AV data with setting EMI = 10 of "copy one generation." In this case, implementation can be performed in the same manner as the ninth to fourteenth embodiments except that an AV data which was recorded with setting EMI = 01 is output with setting EMI = 10. Movement of an AV data of EMI = 11 has been described in the ninth embodiment. In this way, also an AV data other than EMI = 11 can be moved. As a result there is an advantage that the user can freely select a medium on which an AV data is to be stored.

[0358] In the ninth to fourteenth embodiments, EMI has been used. The invention is not restricted to the use of EMI. The presence or absence and the kind of a copy right may be judged by using a CGMS. In the case where the presence or absence and the kind of a copy right are judged by using a CGMS, the same effects as the case of using EMI are attained although the recording and reproducing apparatus of the invention requires a transport decoder in order to detect a CGMS and hence the apparatus has a complicated configuration. In the case of a CGMS, it is requested that an AV data which has been copied once while being maintained to "copy one generation" is again output while being maintained to "copy one generation" to be once reproduced.

[0359] In the present invention, an invalid data is not restricted to a blue back screen or a black screen in the embodiments, and may be any data except an AV data which is to be reproduced, such as a test pattern, a white screen, or a screen containing a message indicating that viewing or listening is not allowed.

[0360] The time-variant key producing means in the present invention is not restricted to the means for producing a key for each block as in the embodiment, and may be any means for producing a time-variant key, such as means for producing a key for every two blocks or for every four blocks.

[0361] The hard disk apparatus of the embodiment is an example of the recording and reproducing apparatus of the invention, also the VCR of the embodiment is an example of the recording and reproducing apparatus of the invention, the reproduction information managing means, the EMI accessing means, and the data block accessing means in the embodiment are examples of the recording means in the present invention, and the EMI accessing means, the reproduction information managing means, the data block accessing means, and the changeover switches in the embodiment are examples of the reproducing means in the present invention.

[0362] The recording and reproducing apparatus of the invention is not restricted to the hard disk apparatus and the VCR of the embodiment, and may be any apparatus which can perform recording and reproduction, such as an optical disk apparatus, or a DVD-RAM apparatus.

[0363] The LBA accessing means which has been described in the ninth to fourteenth embodiments may be accessing means by means of a head, a cylinder, and a sector, in the case of a hard disk apparatus, or accessing means by means of a minute, a second, and a frame (one frame equals to 1/75 sec.) in the case of an optical disk apparatus. In summary, the means may be any means which can physically access a disk medium.

[0364] The ninth to fourteenth embodiments may be implemented so that, in place of outputting an invalid data to a counter apparatus to which an AV data of reproduction information indicative of already-reproduction is to be output, authentication is made or a key for decoding the AV data is not transferred

[0365] Also a program recording medium which is characterized in that the medium stores a program causing a computer to execute the whole or a part of the functions of the recording and reproducing apparatus the invention belongs to the invention.

(Embodiment 15)

[0366] Hereinafter, a fifteenth embodiment will be described.

[0367] First, concepts of a caching apparatus, a noncaching apparatus, and a transmitting apparatus will be described with reference to Figs. 54 and 55. These concepts are commonly used in sixteenth to twenty-first embodiments which will be described later.

[0368] Referring to Fig. 55, a digital bus 354 is, for example, an IEEE standard for High performance Serial Bus which is described in IEEE 1394-1995 (hereinafter, referred to as IEEE 1394 bus), and is a bus through

which a command and a data can be exchanged between apparatuses, such as an IEEE 1394 bus. An STB 355, a TV monitor 356, a hard disk apparatus 357, and the like are connected to the digital bus 354. The STB 355 receives a data sent from a broadcasting station, and transmits the data to the digital bus 354. The TV monitor 356 monitors the data sent to the digital bus 354. The hard disk apparatus 357 records the data sent to the digital bus 354, reproduces a recorded data, and transmits the reproduced data to the digital bus 354. In the embodiment, first, such various apparatuses are classified as a caching apparatus, a noncaching apparatus, and a transmitting apparatus.

[0369] Referring to Fig. 54, the digital bus 354 is an IEEE 1394 bus, can exchange commands and data, and is connected to various apparatuses. Noncaching apparatuses 350 and 351, caching apparatuses 352 and 353, a transmitting apparatus 349, and the like are connected to the digital bus 354.

[0370] The noncaching apparatus 350 or 351 performs a normal process in accordance with the contents of the copyright of a data, such as the television monitor 356, or namely processes a data in accordance with the value of EMI which is contained in the copyright of the data. In the case of the television monitor 356, a data is monitored in any of the cases of EMI of "copy never," "copy one generation," and "no more copy." In the case where the noncaching apparatus 350 or 351 is an apparatus which performs recording and reproduction, such as a hard disk apparatus or a VCR, a data is not recorded when EMI is "copy never" or "no more copy." When EMI is "copy one generation," the data is recorded, and, in reproduction, output while changing EMI from "copy one generation" to "no more copy." In the case where a data sent from a broadcasting station is "copy never," the noncaching apparatus 352 or 353 does not record the data even when it is an apparatus for performing recording and reproduction, and therefore the program can be viewed or listened only during a time zone when the program is broadcast. As described above, the noncaching apparatus 350 or 351 is an apparatus which processes a data in accordance with the contents of the copyright of the data, and can be roughly classified into an apparatus which monitors a data, and an apparatus which performs recording and reproduction depending on the contents of a copyright.

[0371] The caching apparatus 352 or 353 is an apparatus which can record a data of EMI of "copy never" or "no more copy," reproduces only once the data, and does not reproduce the data two or more times. According to this configuration, a data can be viewed or listened in an arbitrary time zone when the user wishes to view or listen the data, while protecting the intention of the author. The apparatus can record also a data of EMI of "copy one generation," can reproduce only once the data, and, in reproduction, outputs the data while maintaining EMI to "copy one generation." According to this configuration, a data can be tem-

porarily held until the user records the data into the noncaching apparatus 350 or 351 while protecting the intention of the author. Therefore, the user can sufficiently study an apparatus which records a data and then record the data into the noncaching apparatus 352 or 353 in a time zone convenient for the user.

[0372] The transmitting apparatus 349 is an apparatus which, unlike the STB 355 of Fig. 55, does not receive a data from the digital bus 354, but acquires a data from another place such as a broadcasting station, and transmits the data to the digital bus 354.

[0373] In the above, the contents of a copyright have been described on the basis of EMI. In the case where a caching apparatus or a noncaching apparatus has a transport stream decoder, a data is processed by a CGMS in accordance with the contents of a copyright. In the case where EMI or a CGMS is "copy free," the data is not copyrighted, and no restriction is therefore imposed on processing of the data.

[0374] A caching apparatus, a noncaching apparatus, and a transmitting apparatus have the above-described concepts.

[0375] In a situation in which the caching apparatus 350 or 351 is connected to the digital bus 354, it is impossible to protect the contents of the copyright of a copyrighted data. Hereinafter, therefore, it will be described that the embodiment can protect the contents of the copyright of a data even in a situation in which the caching apparatus 350 or 351 is connected.

[0376] First, (1) the case where the caching apparatus 352 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354 will be described, (2) the case where the transmitting apparatus 349 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354 will be then described, and (3) the case where the noncaching apparatus 350 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354 will be finally described.

(1) Description of the case where the caching apparatus 52[sic:352] transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354

[0377] When the caching apparatus 352 reproduces only once a copyrighted data, the data is transmitted to the digital bus 354. When the other caching apparatus 352 and the noncaching apparatus 350 or 351 simultaneously use the data, the contents of the copyright cannot be protected. In order to enable the contents of a copyright to be protected, therefore, the following rules are set.

[0378] Namely, the caching apparatus 352 selects an apparatus which receives a copyrighted data from the digital bus 354 and uses the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright.

[0379] The selection is performed in the following manner. In the case where a caching apparatus other than the caching apparatus 352 is connected to the digital bus 354, only one of the caching apparatuses is

allowed to use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright, and the other caching apparatus and noncaching apparatuses are not allowed to use the data. Alternatively, all noncaching apparatuses are allowed to use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright, and the caching apparatuses are not allowed to use the data.

[0380] In the case where a caching apparatus other than the caching apparatus 352 is not connected to the digital bus 354, all apparatuses connected to the digital bus 354 are allowed to use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright.

[0381] In the case where the caching apparatus 352 is an apparatus which can simultaneously perform both recording and reproduction, when one caching apparatus other than the caching apparatus 352 uses and records a copyrighted data which is output by the caching apparatus 352 itself, the caching apparatus 352 is not allowed to record the data which is output by itself. Namely, only one of apparatuses including the caching apparatus 352 which outputs a data is allowed to record the data. The caching apparatus which is allowed to use the data records the data, and reproduces only once the data. If the caching apparatus is the caching apparatus 353, the operation in which the caching apparatus 353 again reproduces only once the data is identical with that in which the caching apparatus 352 reproduces the data.

(2) Description of the case where the transmitting apparatus 349 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354

[0382] The transmitting apparatus 349 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354. When the caching apparatuses 352 and 353 and the noncaching apparatuses 350 and 351 simultaneously use the data, the contents of the copyright cannot be protected. In order to enable the contents of a copyright to be protected, therefore, the following rules are set.

[0383] Namely, the transmitting apparatus 352 selects an apparatus which receives a copyrighted data from the digital bus 354 and uses the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright.

[0384] The selection is performed in the following manner. In the case where one or more caching apparatuses such as the caching apparatus 352 or 352[sic:353] are connected to the digital bus 354, only one of the caching apparatuses is allowed to use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright, and the other caching apparatus and noncaching apparatuses are not allowed to use the data. Alternatively, all noncaching apparatuses are allowed to use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright, and the caching apparatuses are not allowed to use the data.

[0385] In the case where a caching apparatus such as the caching apparatuses 352 and 353 is not connected to the digital bus 354, all apparatuses connected

to the digital bus 354 are allowed to use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright.

[0386] In the case where the transmitting apparatus 349 is an apparatus which receives a stream from the IEEE 1394 bus while performing transmission and which can perform also a monitor output of the received stream, when one caching apparatus other than the transmitting apparatus 349 uses and records a copyrighted data which is output by the transmitting apparatus 349 itself, the transmitting apparatus 349 is not allowed to receive the data which is output by itself. Namely, in the case where the transmitting apparatus has a function of a noncaching apparatus, the process is performed while deeming the function portion as one caching apparatus.

[0387] In the case where the transmitting apparatus 349 has a function of transmitting a data to the digital bus 354 and simultaneously monitor-outputting the data, when one caching apparatus uses and records the copyrighted data which is output by the transmitting apparatus 349, the monitor output is invalidated.

[0388] The caching apparatus which is allowed to use the data records the data, and reproduces only once the data. If the caching apparatus is the caching apparatus 352, the operation in which the caching apparatus 352 again reproduces only once the data is identical with that in "(1) Description of the case where the caching apparatus 352 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354."

(3) Description of the case where the noncaching apparatus 350 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354

[0389] The noncaching apparatus 350 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354. When the caching apparatuses 352 and 353 and the noncaching apparatuses 50[sic:350] and 351 simultaneously use the data, the contents of the copyright cannot be protected. In order to enable the contents of a copyright to be protected, therefore, the following rules are set.

[0390] A configuration that can select an apparatus which receives a copyrighted data from the digital bus 354 and uses the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright is previously produced. This can be performed in one of the following two methods.

[0391] In the first method, authentication or a key which is different from that in the caching apparatuses 352 and 353 and the noncaching apparatuses 350 and 351 is supported. Namely, the authentication method is previously determined so that, in the case where an apparatus which issues an authentication request in order to receive a data from the noncaching apparatus 350 and performs authentication is the noncaching apparatus 351, the authentication succeeds. The authentication method is previously determined so that, in the case where an apparatus which issues an authentication request in order to receive a data from

the noncaching apparatus 350 and performs authentication is the caching apparatus 352 or 353, the authentication fails. However, authentication in transmission from a caching apparatus to a noncaching apparatus must be performed as described in "(1) the case where the caching apparatus transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354." Therefore, the authentication method is previously determined so that the authentication in this case succeeds. When the authentication method is determined as described above, an apparatus which, in the case where a copyrighted data is transmitted from the noncaching apparatus 350 to the digital bus 354, can use the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright is restricted to the noncaching apparatus 350 or 351. Therefore, the contents of the copyright can be protected. If the noncaching apparatus which receives the data is an apparatus which can perform recording and reproduction, it operates in the same manner as the noncaching apparatus 350 with starting from the beginning of this description or "(3) the case where the noncaching apparatus 350 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354."

[0392] In the second method, in the case where a copyrighted data is sent from the noncaching apparatus 350, the caching apparatus 352 or 353 switches the mode so as to operate in the same manner as a noncaching apparatus. In a mode switching method, a caching apparatus is set so as not to enter the mode in which it operates as a caching apparatus, unless it is authenticated as a caching apparatus. In the case where a data of EMI of "copy never" is sent from the noncaching apparatus 350, for example, identification as a noncaching apparatus is performed because the noncaching apparatus 350 fails to support the function of authenticating the caching apparatus 352 or 353 as a caching apparatus. Therefore, the caching apparatus 352 or 353 operates in a mode as a noncaching apparatus. Consequently, the caching apparatus 352 or 353 does not record the data. According to this configuration, also in the case where a data is sent from the noncaching apparatus 350, it is possible to protect a copyright. In the case of such a caching apparatus, when a data of "copy one generation" which is recorded in a noncache mode is to be transmitted in a cache mode, however, the data is set to "no more copy" because of the following reason. The case where a data of "copy one generation" which is recorded in a noncache mode is transmitted in a cache mode while maintaining it to "copy one generation" will be considered. For example, there are an n number of caching apparatuses in front of one noncaching apparatus, and an m number of caching apparatuses are connected to each of the caching apparatuses. When the n number of caching apparatuses record an n number of data of "copy one generation" which operate in a noncache mode and thereafter the n X m number of caching apparatuses enter the cache mode while maintaining "copy one generation" in the cache mode, there exist an n X m

number of data of "copy one generation," with the result that the number of copies can be successively increased. A caching apparatus which receives a data operates as a noncaching apparatus, and therefore operates in the same manner as the description of the noncaching apparatus 350 in "(3) the case where the noncaching apparatus 350 transmits a copyrighted data to the digital bus 354."

[0393] In the embodiment, concepts of a caching apparatus, a noncaching apparatus, and a transmitting apparatus have been described. It has been shown that, even in the case where a caching apparatus is connected to a digital bus, it is possible to protect the copyright of a copyrighted data.

(Embodiment 16)

[0394] Next, a sixteenth embodiment will be described with reference to Fig. 49.

[0395] As described in the fifteenth embodiment, a caching apparatus selects, from apparatuses which receive a data, an apparatus which uses the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright. In the embodiment, a specific example in the case where an apparatus which outputs a data selects an apparatus which uses the data will be described.

[0396] Fig. 49 is a block diagram of transmission selecting means 301 that is incorporated into a caching apparatus and a transmitting apparatus, and that selects an apparatus which uses a data. The transmission selecting means 301 is configured as described below.

[0397] Mode storing means 302 is means for storing as a mode whether a data is enabled to be used by a caching apparatus (hereinafter, referred to as cache mode) or by a noncaching apparatus (hereinafter, referred to as noncache mode) in accordance with the contents of the copyright. Receiving device candidate determining means 303 is means for detecting an apparatus in which a transmission request or an authentication request is produced in order to use a data, or, when a noncaching apparatus is not in a receiving state, an appropriate caching apparatus, and for determining a candidate for an apparatus which uses a data. Receiving device judging means 304 is means for performing authentication to judge an apparatus which wishes to use a data, as a caching apparatus or a noncaching apparatus. Mode determining means 305 is means for determining a mode as the cache mode or the noncache mode in accordance with the kind of an apparatus which uses a data. Notifying means is means for notifying the current mode, i.e., the cache mode or the noncache mode to a noncaching apparatus 311 and a caching apparatus 312. Key producing and outputting means 307 is means for, in the case of the cache mode, producing a key for enabling a specific one of caching apparatuses to decode a data which was encrypted for transmission, and transferring the key to the specific

one, and for, in the case of the noncache mode, producing a key for enabling all of noncaching apparatuses to decode a data which was encrypted for transmission, and transferring the key to the all ones. Encrypting means 308 is means for encrypting a copyrighted data by using the key produced by the key producing and outputting means 307, and for outputting the encrypted data to the digital bus 354. Authenticating means 309 is means for performing authentication when a key for decoding the data encrypted by the encrypting means 308 is to be transferred to a caching apparatus or a non-caching apparatus. A changeover switch 310 is a switch which switches over an apparatus for performing authentication between a caching apparatus and a non-caching apparatus.

[0398] As an apparatus which uses the data from the transmission selecting means 301, the noncaching apparatus 311 and the caching apparatus 312 are connected to the digital bus 354.

[0399] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0400] In advance to transmission of a copyrighted data from the transmission selecting means 301 to the digital bus 354, the receiving device candidate determining means 303 determines a candidate for a receiving apparatus. When a transmission request or an authentication request is issued by the noncaching apparatus 311 or the caching apparatus 312, an apparatus which issues the transmission request or the authentication request is set as a candidate for a receiving apparatus. When no noncaching apparatus issues a transmission request or an authentication request, the receiving device candidate determining means 303 detects a caching apparatus from apparatuses connected to the digital bus 354, and sends a command instructing the caching apparatus to issue an authentication request. In the case where no caching apparatus is connected, one of noncaching apparatuses may be selected, and a command instructing the selected non-caching apparatus to issue an authentication request may be sent. In this way, the receiving device candidate determining means 303 determines a candidate for a receiving apparatus. In order to detect a caching apparatus, for example, a command inquiring whether it is a caching apparatus or not is issued.

[0401] The receiving device judging means 304 judges the kind of a receiving apparatus from candidates which are determined by the receiving device candidate determining means 303. The judgement is performed in the following manner. Authentication as to whether a candidate for a receiving apparatus is a caching apparatus or not is performed. If a candidate receiving apparatus succeeds in authentication with respect to the receiving device judging means 304, the receiving apparatus is judged as a caching apparatus. If authentication fails, the receiving apparatus is judged as a noncaching apparatus.

[0402] Next, the mode determining means 305

determines one of the cache mode and the noncache mode, on the basis of the kind of the receiving apparatus candidate which is judged by the receiving device judging means 304. When the mode is determined, the determined mode is stored into the mode storing means 302. When the mode determining means 305 determines the cache mode, for example, the mode storing means 302 stores the cache mode as the current mode. The notifying means 306 notifies the receiving apparatus candidate determined by the receiving device candidate determining means 303, of the mode determined by the mode determining means 305. When the cache mode is determined, for example, the situation that the mode is the cache mode is notified to all receiving apparatus candidates. The copyrighted data is encrypted by the encrypting means 308, and then output to the digital bus 354. The mode determining means 305 determines one of the receiving apparatus candidates to which the key for decoding the encrypted data is to be sent.

[0403] The judgement criterion by which the mode determining means 305 determines one of the receiving apparatus candidates as an actual receiving apparatus may be decided according to one of the following judgement criteria.

[0404] As a first judgement criterion, a receiving apparatus which first issued a transmission request to the transmission selecting means 301 is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a second judgement criterion, the user previously assigns priority to receiving apparatuses, and a receiving apparatus of higher priority is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a third judgement criterion, a receiving apparatus which lastly issued a transmission request to the transmission selecting means 301 is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a fourth judgement criterion, among receiving apparatus candidates, a caching apparatus is judged as an actual receiving apparatus, in preference to a noncaching apparatus. As a fifth judgement criterion, among receiving apparatus candidates, a non-caching apparatus is judged as an actual receiving apparatus, in preference to a caching apparatus. As a sixth judgement criterion, an actual receiving apparatus is judged on the basis of the ability of an apparatus such as the recording time and the number of simultaneous recording channels. For example, an apparatus having a longer recording time and a larger number of channels which can be simultaneously recorded is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a seventh judgement criterion, an actual receiving apparatus is judged on the basis of the usage frequency of an apparatus. For example, an apparatus which is most frequently used is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. Alternatively, an apparatus which is most infrequently used is judged as an actual receiving apparatus.

[0405] In the above, the judgement criterion for determining one of the receiving apparatus candidates as an actual receiving apparatus by the mode determining means 305 has been described.

[0406] Next, in order to transfer the key, the authenticating means 309 performs authentication with respect to a receiving apparatus candidate to which the key is to be transferred. In the case where it has been determined that the key is to be transferred to the noncaching apparatus 311, for example, the means performs authentication with respect to the noncaching apparatus 311. If the authentication succeeds, the key producing and outputting means 307 produces the key for decoding the encrypted data, and sends the key to all non-caching apparatuses such as the noncaching apparatus 311. In the case where the candidate to which the key is to be transferred is a caching apparatus, the key is sent to only one caching apparatus among caching apparatus serving as candidates. The key is a temporary key which is used by the authenticating means 309 in authentication with respect to a receiving apparatus. The key is previously encrypted, and then transferred to one caching apparatus such as the caching apparatus 312. In the caching apparatus 312, a key for decoding a data is decoded by the temporary key, and then used.

[0407] When a caching apparatus receives the key for decoding a data, the data sent from the digital bus 354 and the key are recorded.

[0408] In the embodiment, a key for decoding an encrypted data is transferred to an apparatus which is selected by the transmission selecting means 301, thereby determining an apparatus which can use a copyrighted data. The manner of selecting an apparatus is identical with that which has been described in the 315th[sic:15th] embodiment.

(Embodiment 17)

[0409] Next, a seventeenth embodiment will be described with reference to Fig. 50.

[0410] As described in the fifteenth embodiment, a caching apparatus selects, from apparatuses which receive a data, an apparatus which uses the data in accordance with the contents of the copyright. Also in the embodiment, a specific example in the case where an apparatus which outputs a data selects an apparatus which uses the data will be described.

[0411] Fig. 50 is a block diagram of transmission selecting means 301 that is incorporated into a caching apparatus and a transmitting apparatus, and that selects an apparatus which uses a data. The transmission selecting means 301 is configured as described below.

[0412] Receiving device candidate determining means 303 is means for detecting an apparatus in which a transmission request or an authentication request is produced in order to use a data, or, when a noncaching apparatus is not in a receiving state, an appropriate caching apparatus, and for determining a candidate for an apparatus which uses a data. In order to detect a caching apparatus, for example, a command inquiring whether it is a caching apparatus or not is

issued. Receiving device grouping means 313 is means for performing authentication with respect to receiving apparatus candidates, thereby grouping the candidates. Key producing means 314 is means for producing a key for decoding an encrypted data, for each of groups of receiving apparatus which have been grouped by the receiving device grouping means 313. Different keys are produced for different groups. Transmission request detecting means 318 is means for detecting a group which issues a transmission request. Transmission group determining means 317 is means for, from the group which is detected as a group issuing a transmission request by the transmission request detecting means 318, and the current transmission group, determining a group of a key of which is to be used for encrypting a copyrighted key. Current transmission group storing means 316 is means for storing the determined group. Key distributing means 315 is means for distributing the key produced by the key producing means 314, to apparatuses of the groups. Authenticating means 309 is means for, when the key produced by the key producing means 314 is to be distributed, performing authentication with respect to an apparatus which issued a request for receiving a key, for encrypting a key for decoding a data by using a temporary key which is produced at this time, and for distributing the encrypted key. A changeover switch 310 switches over an apparatus which is to be subjected to authentication.

[0413] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0414] In advance to transmission of a copyrighted data from the transmission selecting means 301 to the digital bus 354, the receiving device candidate determining means 303 determines a candidate for a receiving apparatus. When a transmission request or an authentication request is issued by a noncaching apparatus, a caching apparatus, or the like, an apparatus which issues the transmission request or the authentication request is set as a candidate for a receiving apparatus. When no noncaching apparatus issues a transmission request or an authentication request, the receiving device candidate determining means 303 detects a caching apparatus from apparatuses connected to the digital bus 354, and sends a command instructing the caching apparatus to issue an authentication request. In the case where no caching apparatus is connected, one of noncaching apparatuses may be selected, and a command instructing the selected non-caching apparatus to issue an authentication request may be sent. In this way, the receiving device candidate determining means 303 determines a candidate for a receiving device.

[0415] The receiving device grouping means 313 judges the kind of a receiving apparatus from the candidates determined by the receiving device candidate determining means 303, and performs grouping. The grouping is performed in the following manner. Authentication as to whether a candidate for a receiving appa-

ratus is a caching apparatus or not is performed. When a candidate receiving apparatus succeeds in authentication with respect to the receiving device grouping means 313, the receiving apparatus is judged as a caching apparatus. If authentication fails, the receiving apparatus is judged as a noncaching apparatus. Furthermore, caching apparatuses distributed into different groups. All noncaching apparatuses are bundled into one group. At present, in the receiving device grouping means 313, apparatuses are divided into three kinds of groups, or groups A, B, and C. All apparatuses of the noncaching group are registered in A. One apparatus of the caching group is registered in B. Another apparatus of the caching group is registered in C.

[0416] The key producing means 314 produces a key for decoding a data, for each of the groups which have been grouped by the receiving device grouping means 313. The keys respectively for the groups are different from one another. Namely, a data which was encrypted by using the key for group A cannot be decoded by using the key for group B.

[0417] The authenticating means 309 performs authentication with respect to an apparatus belonging to each group, and, if the authentication succeeds, encrypts a key determined for each group by using a temporary key which is used in authentication. The key distributing means 315 distributes the key to apparatuses of the group. As described above, in advance to output of a data to the digital bus, apparatuses serving as candidates for a receiving device are grouped, and different keys are distributed for each of the groups, whereby an apparatus which receives the data can be selected.

[0418] The transmission request detecting means 318 detects a group which issues a transmission request. Based on the detection, the transmission group determining means 317 determines a group a key of which is to be used for encrypting and transmitting the data. The encrypting means 308 encrypts the data by using the key of the determined group, and outputs the encrypted data to the digital bus 354. As described above, the keys respectively for the groups are different from one another. Therefore, the data of only the determined group can be decoded.

[0419] In this way, selection of an apparatus such as that which has been described in the sixteenth embodiment is enabled.

[0420] Finally, the judgement criterion by which the transmission group determining means 317 determines a group a key of which is to be used for encrypting and transmitting a data will be described.

[0421] As a first judgement criterion, a receiving apparatus which first issued a transmission request to the transmission selecting means 301 is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a second judgement criterion, the user previously assigns priority to receiving apparatuses, and a receiving apparatus of higher priority is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a third

judgement criterion, a receiving apparatus which lastly issued a transmission request to the transmission selecting means 301 is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a fourth judgement criterion, among receiving apparatus candidates, a caching apparatus is judged as an actual receiving apparatus, in preference to a noncaching apparatus. As a fifth judgement criterion, among receiving apparatus candidates, a noncaching apparatus is judged as an actual receiving apparatus, in preference to a caching apparatus. As a sixth judgement criterion, an actual receiving apparatus is judged on the basis of the ability of an apparatus such as the recording time and the number of simultaneous recording channels. For example, an apparatus having a longer recording time and a larger number of channels which can be simultaneously recorded is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. As a seventh judgement criterion, an actual receiving apparatus is judged on the basis of the usage frequency of an apparatus. For example, an apparatus which is most frequently used is judged as an actual receiving apparatus. Alternatively, an apparatus which is most infrequently used is judged as an actual receiving apparatus.

[0422] In the above, the judgement criterion by which the transmission group determining means 317 determines a group a key of which is to be used for encrypting and transmitting a data has been described.

[0423] In the embodiment, a counter apparatus which uses a data is selected by transferring a key for decoding the data. In addition to this, availability or non-availability of a data may be previously notified to a counter apparatus serving as a candidate for using the data. According to this configuration, the counter apparatus knows availability or nonavailability of the data, and hence is not required to perform a process of decoding the sent data. As a result, a load on each apparatus can be reduced.

(Embodiment 18)

[0424] Next, an eighteenth embodiment will be described with reference to the drawings.

[0425] In the embodiment, an STB will be described as an example of an actual apparatus into which the transmission selecting means 301 described in the sixteenth or seventeenth embodiment is incorporated. The STB functions as a transmitting apparatus.

[0426] Referring to Fig. 51, an antenna 319 is means for receiving a broadcast wave transmitted from a broadcasting station. A tuner section 320 is means for selecting a program in the broadcast wave, and for outputting a transport stream. A transport stream decoder section 321 is means for decoding the transport stream, and for detecting a CGMS. EMI giving means 322 is means for producing EMI from the detected CGMS, and for giving EMI. Digital I/F means 323 is means for exchange data and commands with the digital bus 354. Transmission selecting means 301 is used for selecting

a caching apparatus or a noncaching apparatus to which a copyrighted data is to be sent, and is identical with that described in the sixteenth or seventeenth embodiment.

[0427] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0428] A CGMS is embedded into a broadcast wave transmitted from a broadcasting station. The tuner section 320 which receives the broadcast wave selects a program. The selected program is transferred as a bit stream to the transmission selecting means 301. At the same time, the program is transferred also to the transport stream decoder section 321 to be decoded. During the decoding, the CGMS is detected, and the EMI giving means 322 produces EMI from the CGMS. The transmission selecting means 301 performs a process which is identical with that described in the sixteenth or seventeenth embodiment, and, in the case of a copyrighted data, selects an apparatus in the transmission destination which can use the data, in accordance with the contents of the copyright. The copyrighted data is encrypted, and then output to the digital I/F means 323. At this time, the EMI produced by the EMI giving means 322 is given.

[0429] As described above, the transmission selecting means 301 is incorporated into the STB, and the transmitting apparatus sends a data to a caching apparatus while observing the contents of a copyright. Therefore, in the case where EMI is "copy never," a program can be viewed or listened in an arbitrary time zone other than the broadcast time zone, or, in the case of "copy one generation," a data can be moved at an arbitrary time.

(Embodiment 19)

[0430] Next, a nineteenth embodiment will be described with reference to Fig. 52.

[0431] In the embodiment, a TV monitor will be described as an example of a noncaching apparatus.

[0432] Digital I/F means 327 is means for receiving a data from the digital bus 354, and for exchanging commands. EMI detecting means 328 is means for detecting EMI from a data sent from the digital I/F means 327. Authenticating and decoding means 329 is means for, when a copyrighted data is to be received, performing authentication with respect to an apparatus which transmits the data, for, if the authentication succeeds, receiving a key for decoding an encrypted data, and for decoding the data. A transport stream decoder section 321 is means for decoding the decoded data (transport stream), and for separating multiplexed data. An AV stream decoder section 324 is means for expanding a compressed MPEG data, and for outputting the expanded data while attaining AV synchrony. It is means for separating multiplexed data. A D/A converting section 325 is means for converting the expanded AV digital data into an analog signal. A display apparatus 330 is

means for displaying the analog signal on a display.

[0433] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0434] First, the authenticating and decoding means 329 issues an authentication request for receiving a data, and performs authentication with respect to a data sending apparatus. When the authentication succeeds, a key for decoding the data is encrypted by using a key which is temporarily used in the authentication, and then transferred. At the same time, the EMI detecting means 328 detects EMI. In accordance with the value of EMI, the authenticating and decoding means 329 judges whether the data is to be decoded by using the key for decoding the data or not. When the authenticating and decoding means 329 decodes the data, the data is transferred to the transport stream decoder section 321, and multiplexed data are separated. The AV stream decoder section 324 expands an MPEG data. The D/A converting section 325 converts the digital data into an analog signal. The display apparatus 330 monitors the analog signal.

[0435] The TV monitor of a conventional configuration can function as a noncaching apparatus, even in a situation in which a caching apparatus and a noncaching apparatus exist.

(Embodiment 20)

[0436] Next, a twentieth embodiment will be described with reference to Figs. 1 and 53.

[0437] In the embodiment, a hard disk apparatus functioning as a caching apparatus will be described.

[0438] The stream controlling means 2 of the hard disk apparatus shown in Fig. 1 is configured as shown in Fig. 53.

[0439] Namely, the stream controlling means 2 is configured by EMI detecting means 339, EMI giving means 344, EMI accessing means 340, EMI judging means 341, authenticating and decoding means 342, invalid data outputting means 345, stream accessing means 348, reproduction information managing means 343, data block accessing means 347, a changeover switch 346, and transmission selecting means 301.

[0440] The EMI detecting means 339 is means for detecting a field in which EMI is described, from a header portion in an isochronous packet data which is input from the digital I/F means 1. The EMI giving means 344 is means for giving instructed EMI to a header portion in an isochronous packet data which is to be output to the digital I/F means 1. The EMI accessing means 340 is means for reading out detected EMI information via the LBA accessing means 3, and for recording and reproducing the detected EMI information correspondingly with a designated data block. The EMI judging means 341 is means for judging whether the data is copyrighted or not, and the kind of the copyright, from the EMI information. The authenticating and decoding means 342 is means for performing authenti-

cation among the AV apparatuses via the digital I/F means 1, and for decoding an AV data which is input from the digital I/F means 1. The data block accessing means 347 is means for recording or reproducing data of a designated block number via the LBA accessing means 3, and for notifying the number of a block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 340 and the reproduction information managing means 343. The stream accessing means 348 is means for designating the number of a block which is to be recorded or reproduced, to the data block accessing means 347 in order to execute a command in a predetermined access system which is received from the digital I/F means 1, for managing a stream pointer indicating the position of the block in which the stream currently exists, in accordance with instructions such as reproduction, recording, or stop while assuming the initial data block to the final data block of the user area of the disk medium 6 shown in Fig. 1 as one tape, and for performing recording or reading of stream pointer management information on the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The predetermined access system is a system conforming to, for example, AV/C Digital Interface Command Set VCR subunit Specification version 2.0.1. The changeover switch 346 is means for, in outputting of an AV data to the digital I/F means 1 via the EMI giving means 344, when a result of the reproduction information managing means 343 shows that reproduction has been performed, turning off the switch or changing the switch to the invalid data outputting means 345 to output an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen, and for, when reproduction has not yet been performed, changing the switch to the authenticating and decoding means 342 to output an encrypted AV data. The reproduction information managing means 343 is means for recording and reading out reproduction information corresponding to a designated data block, and for judging from the reproduction information whether reproduction has been performed or not. The transmission selecting means 301 is identical with that described in the sixteenth or seventeenth embodiment.

[0441] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0442] First, the recording operation of the hard disk apparatus will be described.

[0443] The case where a source apparatus sending an AV data is an STB will be described. The STB is the transmitting apparatus of the invention, and comprises the transmission selecting means 301. There is a controller which sends a record start command, a record stop command, and the like to the hard disk apparatus via an IEEE 1394 bus. The description of exchange of commands between the controller and the hard disk apparatus departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0444] First, the hard disk apparatus issues an authentication request to the STB, by means of the authenticating and decoding means 342. As a result, in

the transmission selecting means 301 on the side of the STB, the hard disk apparatus becomes a receiving device candidate. Next, when the hard disk apparatus receives the record start command from the digital I/F means 1, the digital I/F means 1 confirms the number of a channel which is intended to be acquired by oneself, and fetches the corresponding isochronous packet data. The EMI detecting means 339 detects EMI information held in the header portion of the fetched isochronous packet data. The EMI judging means 341 judges whether the data is copyrighted or not, and the contents of the copyright, from the detected EMI information. It is assumed that the hard disk apparatus is recognized as a caching apparatus by the transmission selecting means 301 on the side of the STB, and finally selected as one specific caching apparatus which transmits the AV data. The authenticating and decoding means 342 receives the key sent from the STB, via the digital I/F means 1. When EMI is "copy free," however, the authenticating and decoding means 342 does not receive the key sent from the STB. In this case, the AV data itself is not encrypted. In the case where EMI is "copy never," the case where EMI is "copy one generation," and the case where EMI is "no more copy," the authenticating and decoding means 342 receives the key.

[0445] In the case where EMI of an AV data is not "copy free," the authenticating and decoding means 342 decodes the AV data via the digital I/F means 1. In the case where EMI is "copy free," the AV data is not encrypted, and hence the authenticating and decoding means 342 allows the AV data to pass therethrough. The stream accessing means 348 instructs the data block accessing means 347 to record block x. The data block accessing means 347 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 340. The EMI accessing means 340 records the EMI information detected by the EMI detecting means 339, correspondingly with the notified block number. Since the hard disk apparatus of the invention functions as a caching apparatus, in the case where EMI is "copy one generation," when the EMI information is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6, recording is performed without rewriting EMI to "no more copy." The data block accessing means 347 notifies the number (= x) of the block which is currently accessed, to the reproduction information managing means 343. During recording, the reproduction information managing means 343 stores reproduction information in the form of a table, correspondingly with the notified block number (= x). Furthermore, information that the data has not yet been reproduced is registered into reproduction information. Namely, reproduction information is updated with play_flag = 0. Next, the reproduction information managing means 343 records reproduction information onto the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set. Next, it is judged whether

another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the record command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be recorded onto the disk medium 6 has been described.

[0446] Next, the reproducing operation of the hard disk apparatus will be described. The case where the counter apparatus receiving an AV data is a TV monitor will be described. There is a controller which sends a reproduction start command, a reproduction stop command, and the like to the hard disk apparatus. The description of exchange of commands between the controller and the hard disk apparatus departs from the spirit of the embodiment. In the embodiment, therefore, the description is omitted.

[0447] First, the TV monitor issues an authentication request to the hard disk apparatus. As a result, in the transmission selecting means 301 of the hard disk apparatus, the TV monitor becomes a receiving device candidate. Next, by the operation of the transmission selecting means 301 which has been described in the sixteenth or seventeenth embodiment, authentication is performed with respect to the TV monitor (noncaching apparatus), and a key is transferred. Next, when the hard disk apparatus receives the reproduction start command, the stream accessing means 348 instructs the data block accessing means 347 to reproduce block x . The data block accessing means 347 notifies the number ($= x$) of the block which is currently accessed, to the EMI accessing means 340 and the reproduction information managing means 343. At the same time, the data block accessing means 347 reads out an AV data from the disk medium 6 via the LBA accessing means 3. The EMI accessing means 340 reads out EMI information corresponding to the notified block number, from the disk medium 6. The read out EMI information is subjected to judgement in the EMI judging means 341. The judgement result is sent to the transmission selecting means 301, the reproduction information managing means 343, and the authenticating and decoding means 342.

[0448] When the EMI judgement result shows that EMI is "copy free," the transmission selecting means 301 does not encrypt the data, and the AV data is output without being encrypted. When EMI is not "copy free," the transmission selecting means 301 encrypts the data and outputs the encrypted data. During reproduction, the reproduction information managing means 343 updates reproduction information, and checks the judgement result of the read out EMI information.

[0449] When EMI is not "copy free," the reproduction information managing means 343 judges whether the AV data has been reproduced or not. In the case where EMI is "copy never" and reproduction has been performed, the changeover switch 346 is switched to the side of the invalid data outputting means 345 to output

an invalid data such as a blue back screen or a black screen.

[0450] Next, the block number is incremented by one, or $x = x + 1$ is set. Next, it is judged whether another command from the digital I/F means 1 is received or not. If another command is received, the process is ended. When the reproduction process is ended, reproduction information from the initial number to the final number of reproduced blocks is accessed by the reproduction information managing means 343, and updated to already-reproduction or play_flag = 1. If not, the process which has been performed after the reception of the reproduction command is repeatedly performed until another command is received. The case where an AV data is to be reproduced has been described.

[0451] In the case where EMI of an AV data recorded in the hard disk apparatus is not "copy free," the AV data which is not "copy free" is allowed to be reproduced only once, by switching over the changeover switch 346 in accordance with judgement by the reproduction information managing means 343, and managing reproduction information by the reproduction information managing means 317.

[0452] The reproduction information managing means, the EMI accessing means, and the data block accessing means in the embodiments are examples of the recording means in the invention, and the EMI accessing means, the reproduction information managing means, the data block accessing means, and the changeover switches are examples of the recording means in the invention.

(Embodiment 21)

[0453] Next, a twenty-first embodiment will be described with reference to Fig. 51.

[0454] In the embodiment, the case where an analog monitor is connected to the STB of the eighteenth embodiment will be described.

[0455] In the embodiment, portions which are different from the eighteenth embodiment will be mainly described.

[0456] The STB serving as the transmitting apparatus of the invention comprises an AV stream decoder section 324 and a D/A converting section 325 in addition to the configuration of the eighteenth embodiment, connected to an analog monitor through an analog terminal, and configured so that a program received by the STB can be viewed or listened through the analog monitor.

[0457] The AV stream decoder section 324 is means for expanding an MPEG data output from the transport stream decoder section 321. The D/A converting section 325 is means for converting the expanded digital data into an analog signal.

[0458] Next, the operation of the embodiment will be described.

[0459] The configuration in which, with respect to a broadcast wave transmitted from a broadcasting station, a counter apparatus is selected by the transmission selecting means 301 and a data is used in accordance with the copyright has been described in the sixteenth and seventeenth embodiments. Since the analog monitor is connected to the STB, it is possible to always view or listen a data. Consequently, there arises a problem in that, when a data is output to the digital bus 354 while viewing or listening the data through the analog monitor, the copyright cannot be protected.

[0460] To comply with this, in the embodiment, when the transmission selecting means 301 enables a caching apparatus to use a data, a changeover switch 326 is turned off so that the data is not output to the analog monitor. Alternatively, the changeover switch 326 may not be used, and a data in a scrambled state may be output to the analog monitor.

[0461] In order to realize this, the mode or the group which is stored in the mode storing means 302 or the current transmission group storing means 316 constituting the transmission selecting means 301 is referred, and, when it is of a caching apparatus, the changeover switch may be turned off or a data may be scrambled as described above.

[0462] According to this configuration, it is possible to protect a copyright even when a monitor is connected to an STB.

[0463] In the embodiment, a transmitting apparatus has been described. When a similar process is applied to a caching apparatus to which a monitor is connected, a data can be output while observing a copyright.

[0464] The digital I/F means of the embodiment is an example of the outputting means in the invention, may be an IEEE 1394 interface, or may be an interface conforming to another standard.

[0465] The embodiment has been described by using mainly EMI. The invention is not restricted to this. A CGMS may be used, or both EMI and a CGMS may be used.

[0466] The caching apparatus of the invention is not restricted to the hard disk apparatus of the embodiment. Also a VCR, an optical disk apparatus, a DVD-RAM apparatus, and the like, or in summary an apparatus which can perform recording and reproduction may be used as the caching apparatus. In this case, as described in the twentieth embodiment, the recording means, the reproducing means, and the transmission selecting means in the invention must be disposed.

[0467] In the configuration example of the caching apparatus of the invention, with respect to the configuration other than the transmission selecting means 301, any configuration may be employed as far as it can realize a function of performing only once reproduction, correspondingly with EMI or a CGMS.

[0468] In the transmitting apparatus or the caching apparatus of the invention, when keys for encrypting/decoding AV data of "copy never," "copy one gener-

ation," and "no more copy" are different from each other, safety can be enhanced. The authentication methods of transferring/obtaining keys for "copy never," "copy one generation," and "no more copy" may be different from one another. For example, a public key system may be used for "copy never," and a common key system may be used for "copy one generation" and "no more copy." According to this configuration, safety is further improved.

[0469] The functions of the components of the transmitting apparatus or the caching apparatus of the invention may be realized by dedicated hardware, or of one generation, an AV data can be moved by reproducing only two times the data, and the user can freely select a medium on which the data is to be stored.

[0470] Furthermore, the invention can provide a caching apparatus, a transmitting apparatus, and a program recording medium in which, with respect to a copyrighted data, the copyright can be protected in accordance with the intention of the author, the data can be viewed or listened in an arbitrary time zone other than a time zone when the data is broadcast, and, even in the case where a monitor terminal is disposed and a monitor is connected to the terminal, when the data is copyrighted, the copyright can be protected in accordance with the intention of the author.

[0471] Moreover, as apparent from the above description, the invention can provide a recording and reproducing apparatus and a program recording medium in which, in the case where information indicative of copy right information of a program indicates copy inhibit, a user can view or listen an AV data in accordance with the intention of the author that viewing or listening is permitted only once, and the user can view or listen the AV data without limiting a time zone after the AV data is broadcast. Furthermore, the invention can provide also a recording and reproducing apparatus in which, in the case where copy right information indicates copy inhibit or allowance of copy of one generation, an AV data can be moved by reproducing only once the data, and the user can freely select a medium on which the data is to be stored.

[0472] Moreover, as apparent from the above description, the invention can provide a caching apparatus, a transmitting apparatus, and a program recording medium in which, with respect to a copyrighted data, the copyright can be protected in accordance with the intention of the author, the data can be viewed or listened in an arbitrary time zone other than a time zone when the data is broadcast, and, even in the case where a monitor terminal is disposed and a monitor is connected to the terminal, when the data is copyrighted, the copyright can be protected in accordance with the intention of the author.

Claims

1. A recording and reproducing apparatus character-

ized in that said apparatus comprises:

inputting means for receiving a packet data which is based on IEEE 1394, and in which signal information for indicating copy right information of an AV data (hereinafter, referred to as EMI) is provided in a header of a packet according to IEEE 1394; and recording and reproducing means for recording and reproducing an AV data and the EMI which are held in the packet data received by said inputting means.

2. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that four kinds of EMI are used, and, when an AV data indicating allowance "copy one generation" among them is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means performs recording while rewriting the EMI to EMI indicating "no more copy."
3. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that said recording and reproducing means records the EMI into an area which a user cannot access.
4. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 3, characterized in that said area which a user cannot access is an area which cannot be accessed in the unit of LBA (logical block address), an area in which an area which can be accessed in the unit of LBA is limited, an alternate sector area, an area (AUX) other than an area which is to be reproduced as an AV data, a RAM added to a recording medium, a header area of an optical disk, a power calibration area, a recording management area, a lead-in area, or a lead-out area.
5. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records the AV data and the EMI in a same area with pairing the AV data and the EMI.
6. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records the AV data and the EMI in different areas with pairing the AV data and the EMI.
7. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, in a case where the AV data indicates that the AV data is not "copy free," when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records the AV data in plaintext.
8. A recording and reproducing apparatus according

to claim 1, characterized in that said apparatus further comprises recording encrypting means for encrypting an AV data by encryption, modulation, or a change of a recording format, and, in the case where the AV data indicates that the data is not "copy free," when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records an AV data which is encrypted by said recording encrypting means.

9. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 8, characterized in that, during recording, said recording encrypting means encrypts an AV data so that a kind of encryption and/or a key are different in accordance with a value of the EMI.
10. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, in a case where authentication with respect to an apparatus which sends out the AV data succeeds, said recording and reproducing means sets the EMI so as to be accessible by a user, and, in a case where the authentication does not succeed, records EMI in an area which the user cannot access.
11. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording and reproducing means records EMI in an area which a user can access, restricts execution of a user access command for enabling the user to access the EMI, thereby disabling the user to access the EMI.
12. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 11, characterized in that, in a case where authentication with respect to an apparatus which sends out the AV data succeeds, said recording and reproducing means allows execution of the user access command to enable the user to access the EMI, and, in a case where the authentication with respect to the apparatus which sends out the AV data does not succeed, does not allow execution of the user access command.
13. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in a case where EMI indicates that the AV data is not "copy free," said recording and reproducing means encrypts the AV data and then outputs the encrypted data.
14. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 1, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced,

in the case where the EMI indicates that the AV data is not "copy free" and authentication with respect to an apparatus of a reproduction des-

- mination has not yet succeeded, said recording and reproducing means does not output the AV data, and outputs an invalid data, and in the case where the EMI indicates that the AV data is not "copy free" and authentication with respect to the apparatus of a reproduction destination succeeds, said recording and reproducing means outputs the AV data.
15. A program recording medium characterized in that said medium stores a program for causing a computer to execute a whole or a part of functions of said recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 1 to 14.
16. A recording medium characterized in that said medium records the EMI according to any one of claims 1 to 14.
17. A recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:
- recording means for recording an AV data; and reproducing means for, in the case where the data is copyrighted, reproducing only once the data without changing contents of a copyright of the data which is recorded by said recording means.
18. A recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:
- recording means for recording an AV data; and reproducing means for, in the case where signal information indicating copy right information of the AV data shows "copy never" allowing viewing or listening to be performed only once, reproducing only once the AV data which is recorded by said recording means.
19. A recording and reproducing apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:
- recording means for recording an AV data; and reproducing means for, in the case where signal information indicating copy right information of the AV data shows "copy one generation" allowing copying to be performed only once, reproducing only once the AV data while setting signal information indicating copy right information of the AV data which has been copied once by said recording means, to "copy one generation" allowing copying to be again performed only once.
20. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 18 or 19, characterized in that the copy right information is held as EMI in a header of a packet according to IEEE 1394, and sent to said apparatus as a packet data on the basis of IEEE 1394.
21. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 18 or 19, characterized in that the copy right information is a CGMS which is embedded into a content of a packet according to IEEE 1394, and sent to said apparatus as a packet data on the basis of IEEE 1394.
22. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 18 to 21, characterized in that, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be recorded, said recording means adds reproduction information indicating that the data has not yet been reproduced, and
- in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be reproduced, said reproducing means adds the reproduction information indicating that the data has already been reproduced, to a reproduced portion of the AV data, thereby discriminating the portion from a not-yet-reproduced portion of the AV data.
23. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 18 to 21, characterized in that, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be reproduced, said reproducing means deletes allocation information relating to the AV data on a recording medium, and sets an area occupied by the AV data to a space area.
24. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 18 to 21, characterized in that, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the AV data is to be reproduced, said reproducing means erases a recording portion on a recording medium in which the AV data is recorded.
25. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 22, characterized in that said recording means records the AV data and the reproduction information into a same area with being correlated with each other.
26. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 22, characterized in that said recording means records the AV data and the reproduction information into different areas with being correlated with each other.

27. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 22, 25, or 26, characterized in that said recording means records the reproduction information into an area which a user cannot access.

28. A recording medium characterized in that said medium records the reproduction information according to claims 22, 25, 26, or 27.

29. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 22, 25, 26, or 27, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows that the AV data is "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the reproduction information shows that a whole or a part of the AV data has not yet been reproduced, said reproducing means encrypts the AV data in the portion and then outputs the encrypted data.

30. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 22, 25, 26, or 27, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows that the AV data is "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the reproduction information shows that a whole or a part of the AV data has already been reproduced, said reproducing means encrypts the AV data in the portion and then outputs the encrypted data, and does not output a key for decoding.

31. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 22, 25, 26, 27, or 29, characterized in that, when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," when the reproduction information shows that a whole or partial portion of the AV data has already been reproduced, said reproducing means does not output the AV data in the part, and outputs an invalid data.

32. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 18 to 21, characterized in that said apparatus has:

time-variant key producing means for producing a series of keys which are changed with a passage of time;

recording encrypting means for encrypting the AV data by using the key; and
reproduction decoding means for decoding the encrypted AV data,

when the AV data is to be recorded, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said recording encrypting means sequentially encrypts the AV data by using the key produced by said time-variant key producing means,
said recording means records the key and the

AV data with correlating with each other,
when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said reproducing means fetches the encrypted AV data and the key, and erases a recording portion of the fetched key, and
said reproduction decoding means decodes the encrypted AV data by using the fetched key.

33. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 32, characterized in that, when the recording portion of the fetched key is to be erased, said reproducing means deletes an information related to a recorded position of said key on the medium.

34. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 18 to 21, characterized in that said apparatus has:

time-variant key producing means for producing a series of keys which are changed with a passage of time;

recording encrypting means for encrypting the AV data by using the key; and
reproduction decoding means for decoding the encrypted AV data,

when the AV data is to be recorded, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said recording encrypting means sequentially encrypts the AV data by using the key produced by said time-variant key producing means,
said recording means records the key and the AV data with correlating with each other, and performs recording with adding key reading out information indicating that the key have not yet been read out,

when the AV data is to be reproduced, in the case where the copy right information shows "copy never" or "copy one generation," said reproducing means fetches the encrypted AV data and the key, and adds the key reading out information indicating that the fetched key has already been read out, and
said reproduction decoding means decodes the encrypted AV data by using the fetched key.

35. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 32 or 34, characterized in that said recording means records the key or the key reading out information into a same area as the AV data with being correlated with each other.

36. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 32 or 34, characterized in that said recording means records the key or the key reading out information into an area different from the AV data

with being correlated with each other.

37. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 32, 34, 35, or 36, characterized in that said recording means records the key or the key reading out information into an area which a user cannot access. 5
38. A recording and reproducing apparatus according to claim 27 or 37, characterized in that said area which a user cannot access is an area which cannot be accessed in the unit of LBA (logical block address), an area in which an area which can be accessed in the unit of LBA is limited, an alternate sector area, an area (AUX) other than an area which is to be reproduced as an AV data, a RAM added to a recording medium, a header area of an optical disk, a power calibration area, a recording management area, a lead-in area, or a lead-out area. 10 15 20
39. A recording medium characterized in that said medium records the key reading out information according to claim 34. 25
40. A program recording medium characterized in that said medium stores a program for causing a computer to execute a whole or a part of functions of said recording and reproducing apparatus according to any one of claims 18 to 39. 30
41. A caching apparatus comprising:
- recording means for recording a data; and reproducing means for, in the case where the data is copyrighted, reproducing only once the data without changing contents of a copyright of the data which is recorded by said recording means, 35
- and connected to plural counter apparatuses, and characterized in that said apparatus further comprises transmission selecting means for selecting which of said connected counter apparatuses is enabled to use a data reproduced by said reproducing means, in accordance with contents of a copyright. 40 45
42. A caching apparatus according to claim 41, characterized in that, when a copyrighted data is to be sent, 50
- in the case where said counter apparatuses include one or more apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables only one of said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, or all apparatuses not hav-

ing a function of said caching apparatus, excluding said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright, and in the case where said counter apparatuses include no apparatus having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables all of said counter apparatuses to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright.

43. A caching apparatus according to claim 41 or 42, characterized in that said transmission selecting means transfers a key for decoding an encrypted copyrighted data, to said counter apparatus, thereby selecting said counter apparatus.
44. A caching apparatus according to claim 41 or 42, characterized in that said transmission selecting means previously distributes keys for decoding a data, to said connected counter apparatuses, and determines one of the keys to be used for encrypting a copyrighted data, thereby selecting said counter apparatus.
45. A caching apparatus according to claim 43 or 44, characterized in that, in advance to transfer the key to said counter apparatus, said transmission selecting means performs authentication with respect to said counter apparatus, and, only when the authentication succeeds, transfers the key.
46. A caching apparatus according to claim 45, characterized in that, when none of said counter apparatuses not having a function of said caching apparatus performs reception, said transmission selecting means detects said caching apparatus, and instructs said caching apparatus to issue an authentication request for receiving the key.
47. A caching apparatus according to claim 45, characterized in that, when the key is to be transferred to said counter apparatus, said transmission selecting means encrypts the key by using a temporary key which is used in the authentication with respect to said counter apparatus, and transfers the encrypted key to said counter apparatus.
48. A caching apparatus according to any one of claims 41 to 47, characterized in that, in the case where the data is not copyrighted ("copy free"), said transmission selecting means does not encrypt the data.
49. A caching apparatus according to any one of claims 41 to 48, characterized in that the contents of the copyright is one of "copy never" allowing viewing or listening to be performed only once, "copy one generation" allowing copying to be performed only

once, and "no more copy" not allowing further copying.

50. A caching apparatus according to any one of claims 41 to 49, characterized in that one of said connected counter apparatuses is a monitor which is directly connected to said caching apparatus.

51. A transmitting apparatus comprising

outputting means for outputting a data, and connected to plural counter apparatuses, and characterized in that said apparatus comprises transmission selecting means for selecting which of said connected counter apparatuses is enabled to use a data output by said outputting means, in accordance with contents of copyright, and

said counter apparatuses include one or more, or none of said caching apparatus according to any one of claims 41 to 50.

52. A transmitting apparatus according to claim 51, characterized in that, when a copyrighted data is to be sent,

in the case where said counter apparatuses include one or more apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables only one of said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, or all apparatuses not having a function of said caching apparatus, excluding said apparatuses having a function of said caching apparatus, to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright, and in the case where said counter apparatuses include no apparatus having a function of said caching apparatus, said transmission selecting means enables all of said counter apparatuses to use the data in accordance with contents of the copyright.

53. A transmitting apparatus characterized in that said apparatus comprises:

analog outputting means for outputting a data in an analog manner; and

digital outputting means for outputting the data in a digital manner, and

when said digital outputting means outputs a copyrighted data in a digital manner, an analog output of said analog outputting means is nullified.

54. A transmitting apparatus according to claim 53, characterized in that,

when said digital outputting means outputs a copyrighted data in a digital manner to a recording and reproducing apparatus comprising:

recording means for recording a data; and reproducing means for, in the case where the data is copyrighted, reproducing only once the data without changing contents of the copyright of the data,

the analog output of said analog outputting means is nullified.

55. A transmitting apparatus according to claim 51 or 52, characterized in that one of said connected counter apparatuses is a monitor which is directly connected to said transmitting apparatus.

56. A transmitting apparatus according to any one of claims 51 to 55, characterized in that the contents of the copyright is one of "copy never" allowing viewing or listening to be performed only once, "copy one generation" allowing copying to be performed only once, and "no more copy" not allowing further copying.

57. A program recording medium characterized in that said medium stores a program for causing a computer to execute a whole or a part of functions of said caching apparatus or said transmitting apparatus according to any one of claims 41 to 56.

Fig. 1

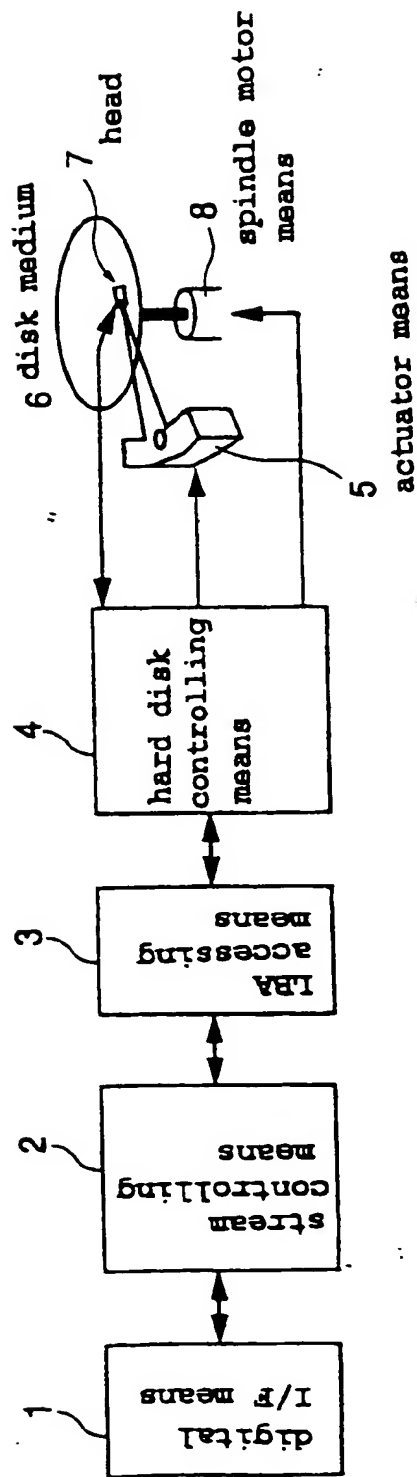


Fig. 2

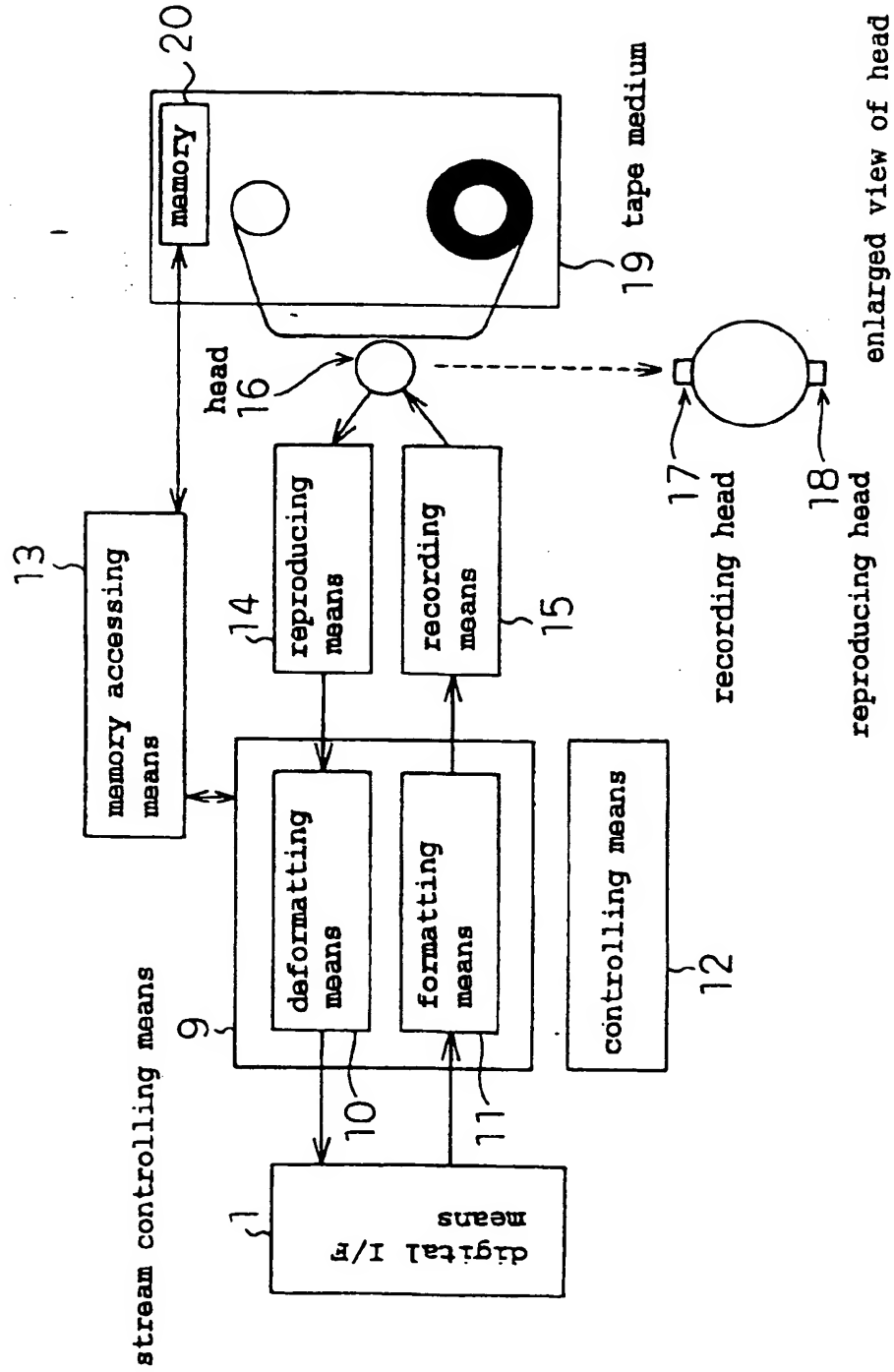


Fig. 3

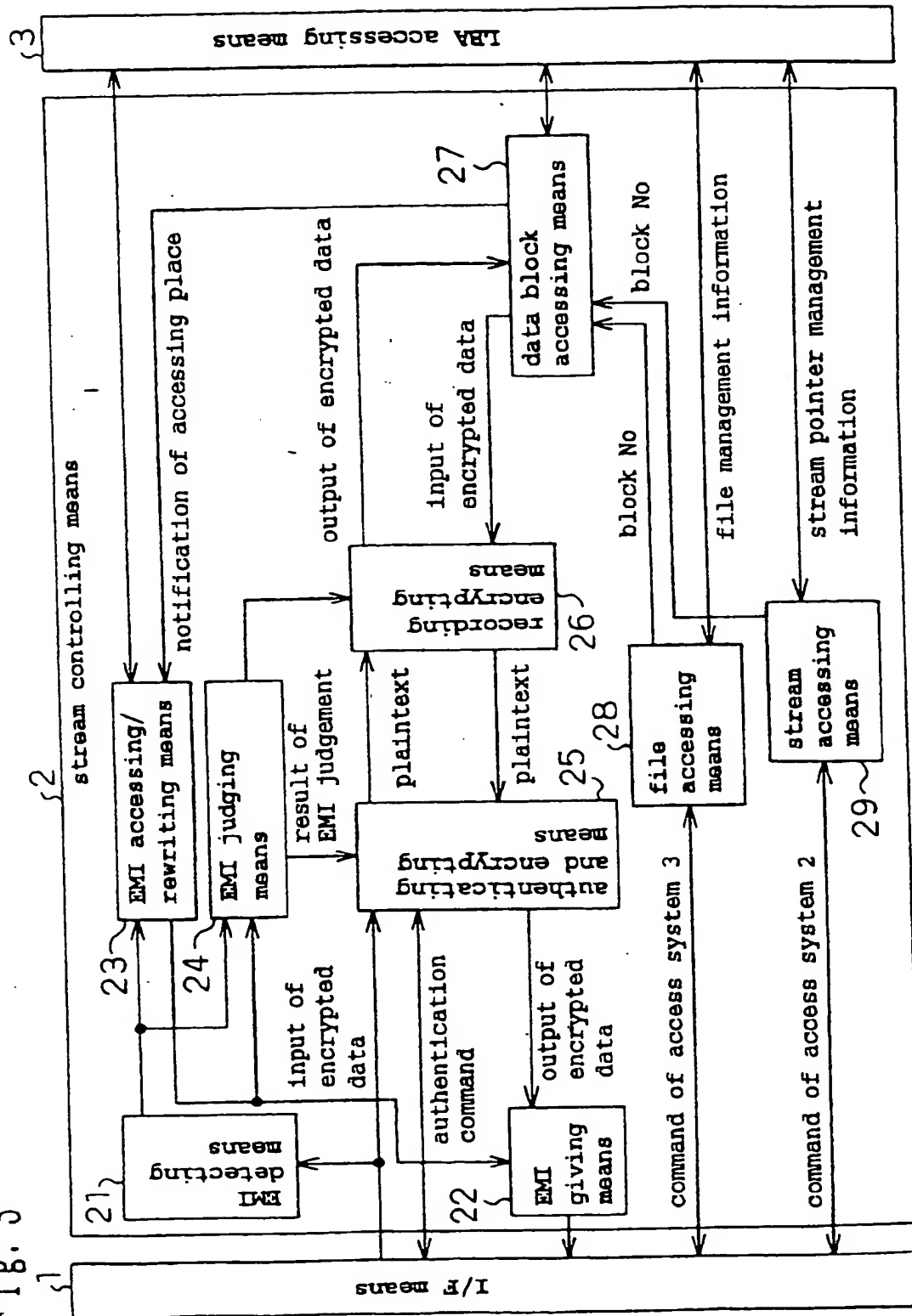


Fig. 4

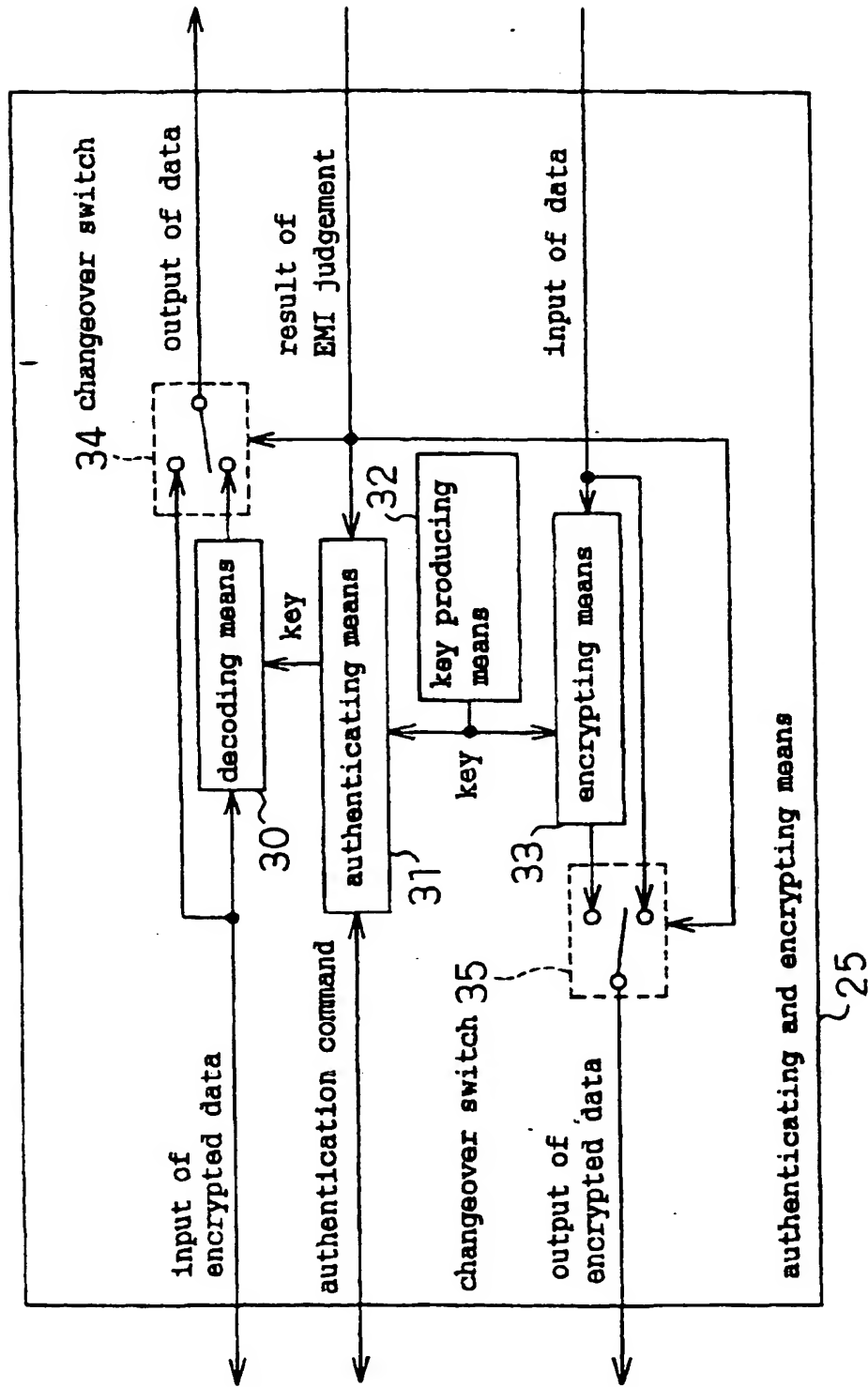
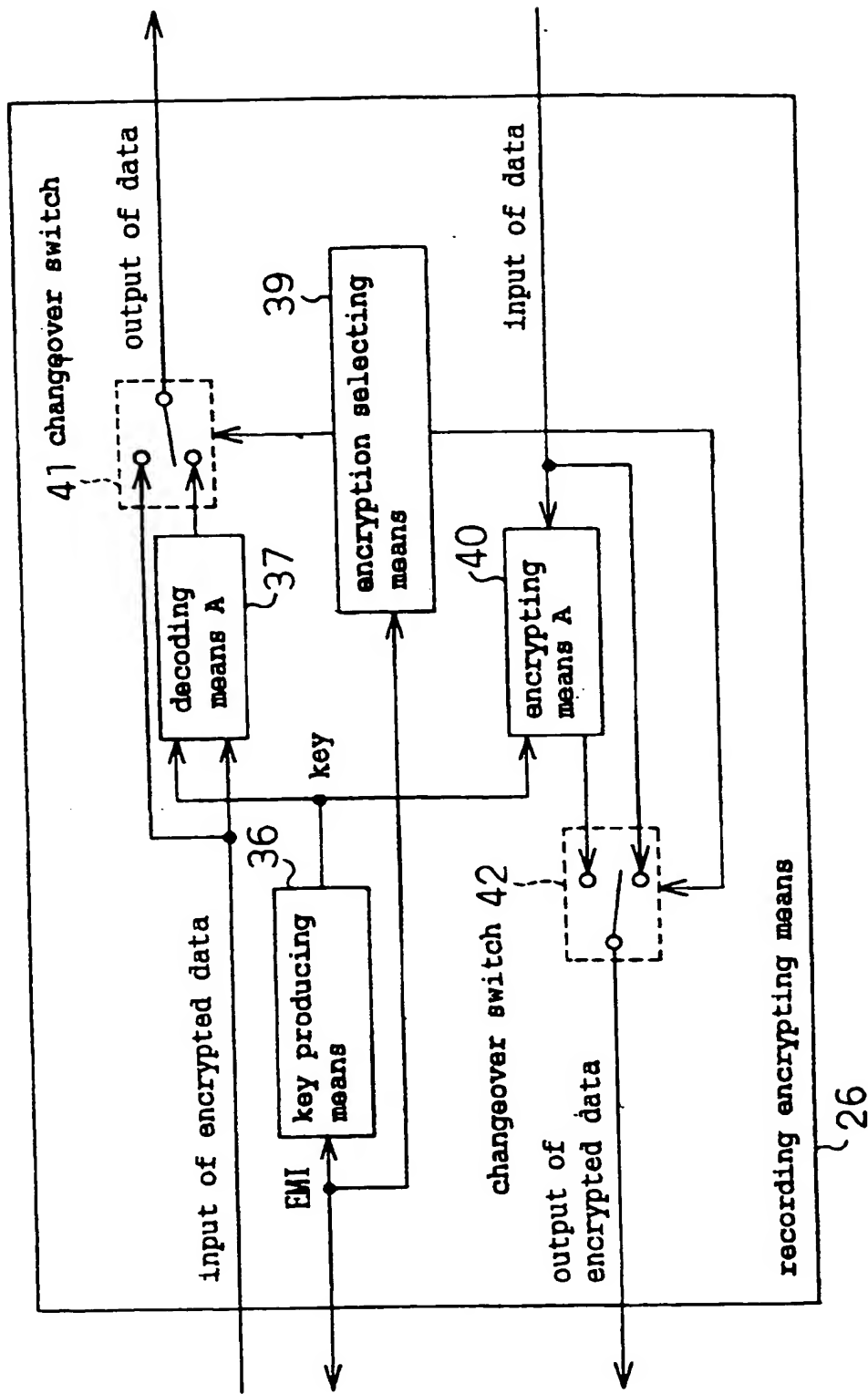


Fig. 5



316

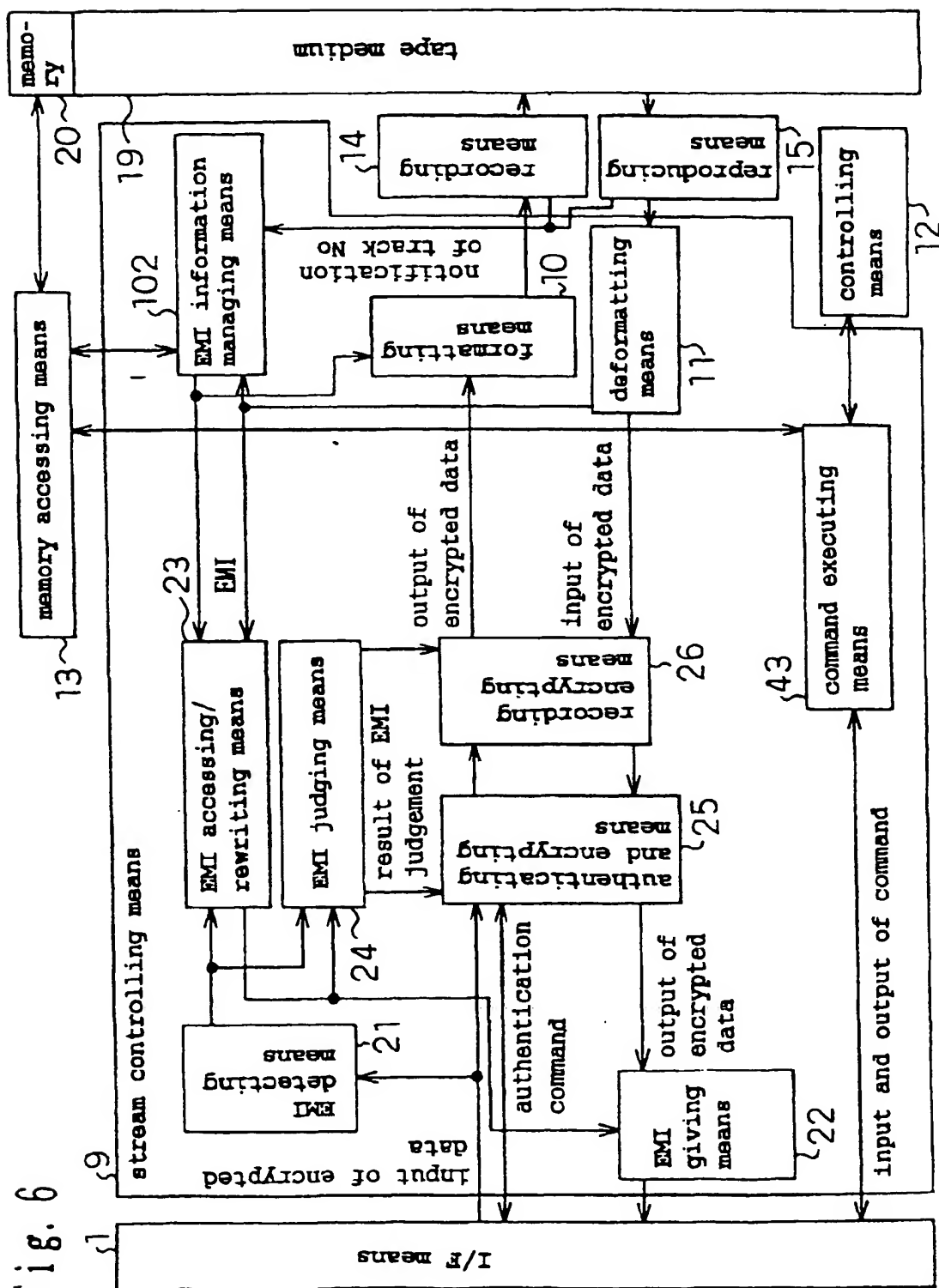


Fig. 7

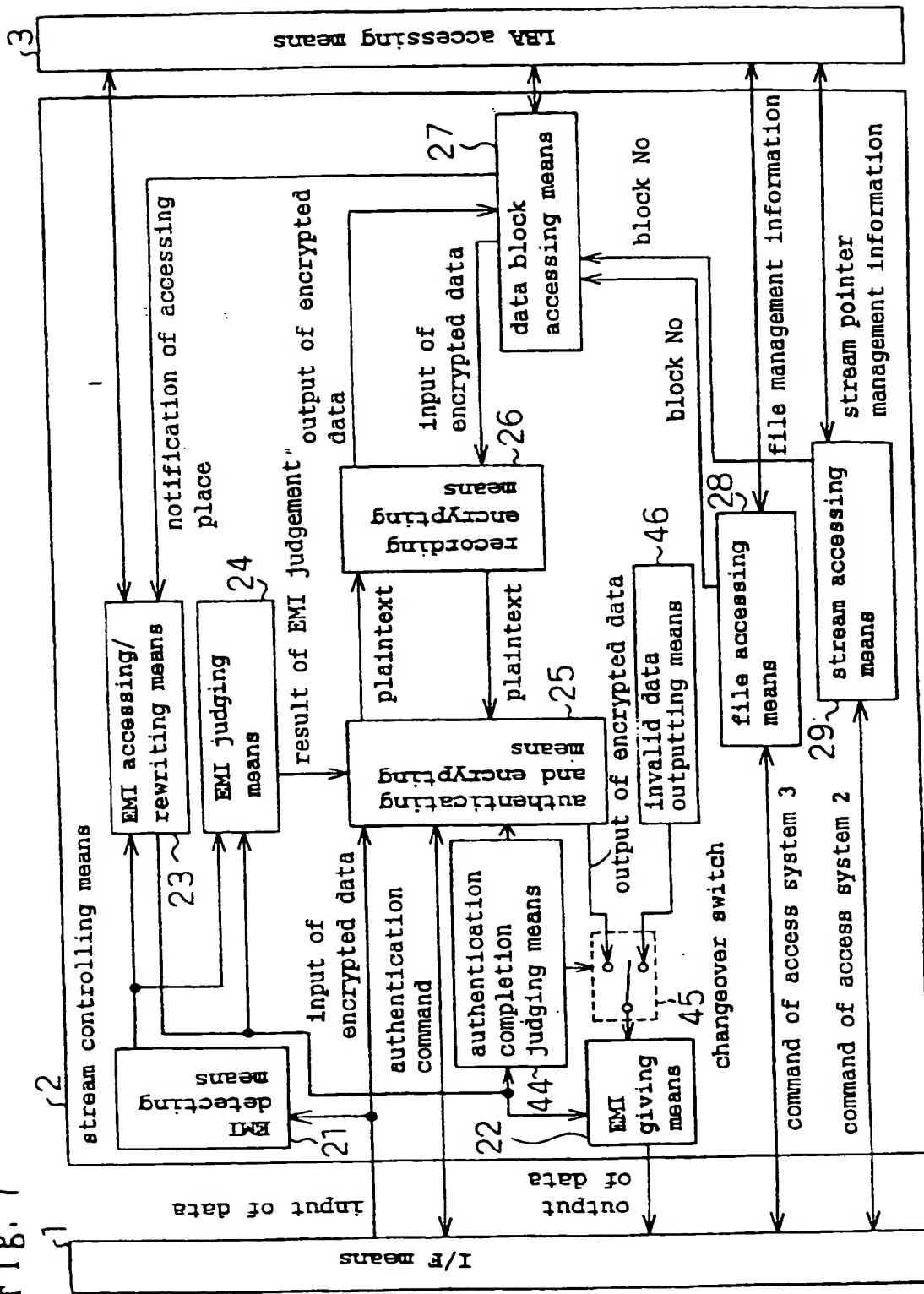


Fig. 8

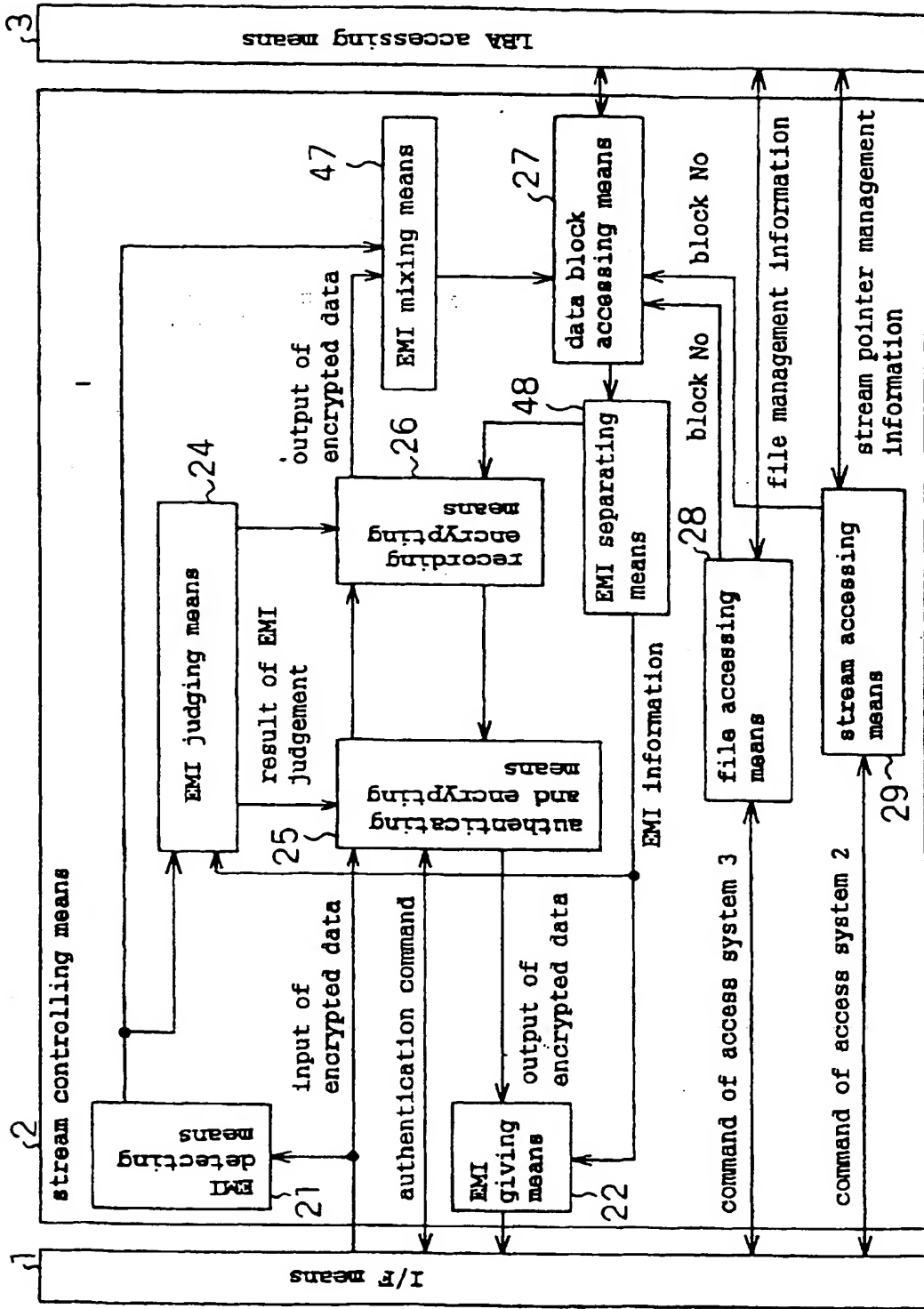


Fig. 9

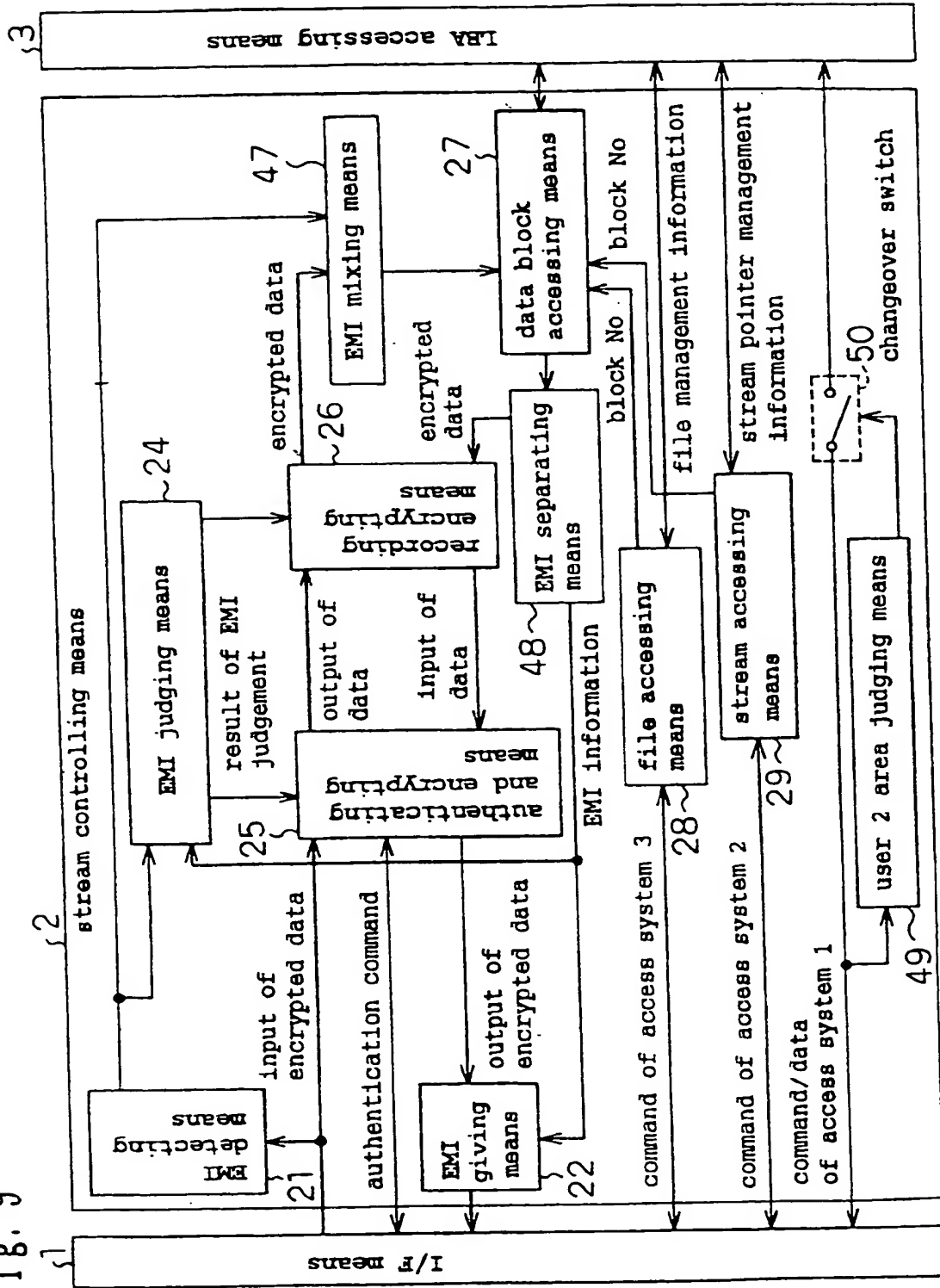


Fig. 10

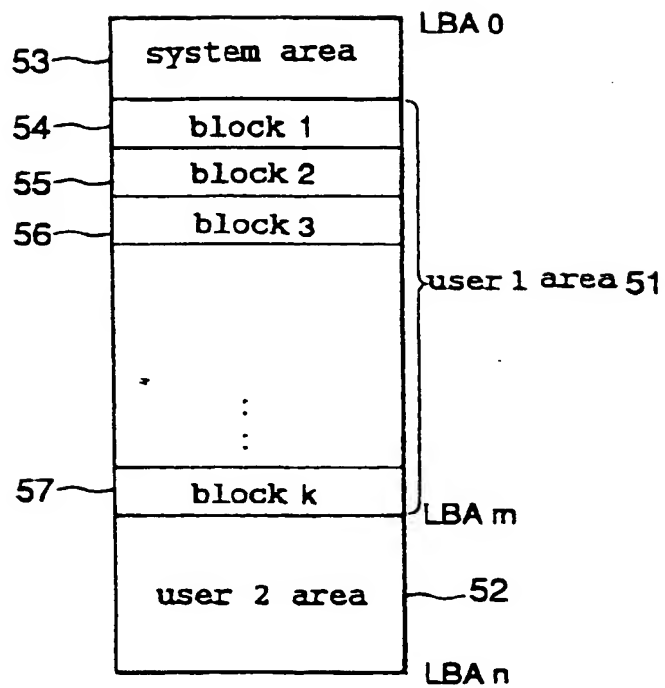


Fig. 11

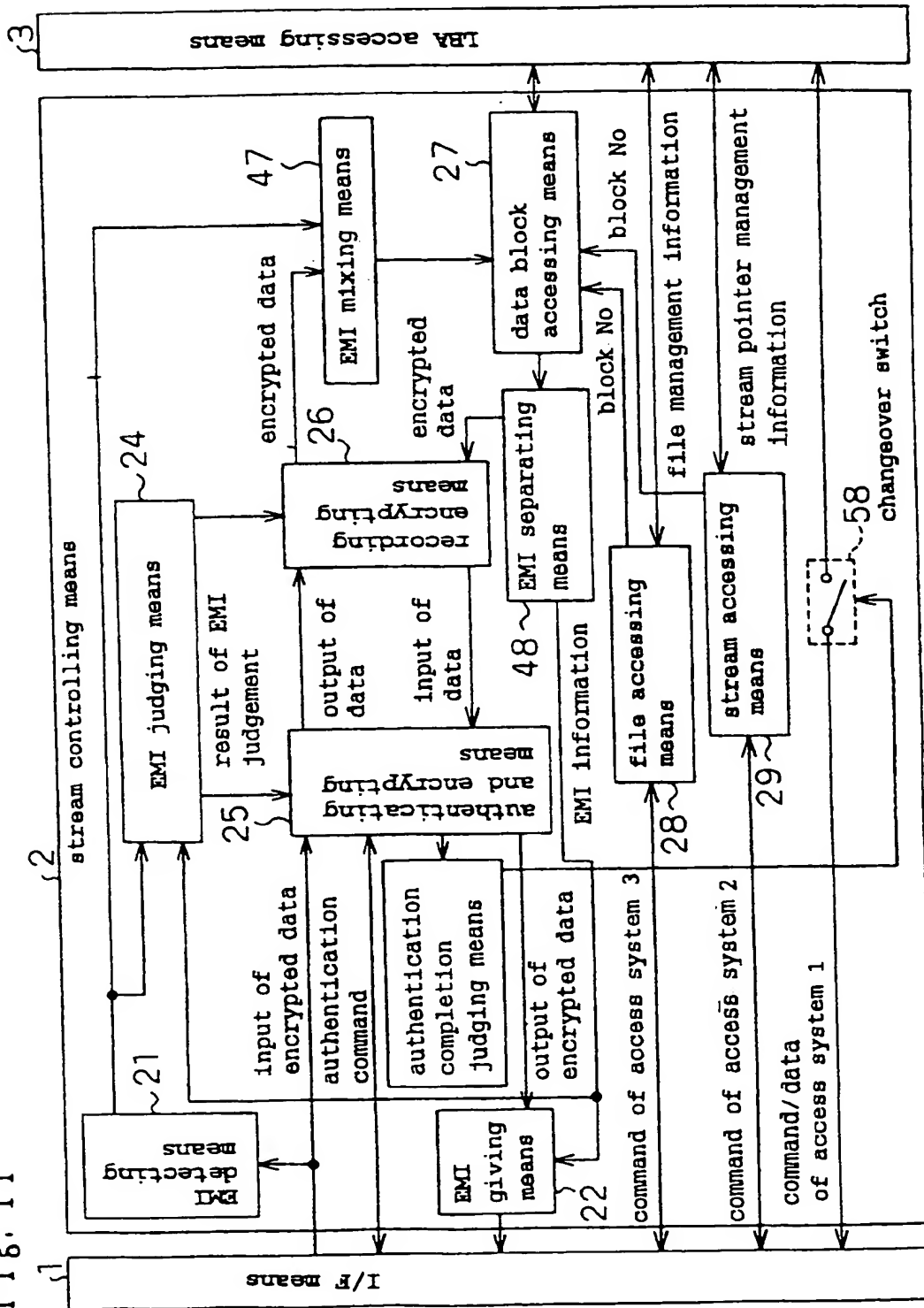


Fig. 12

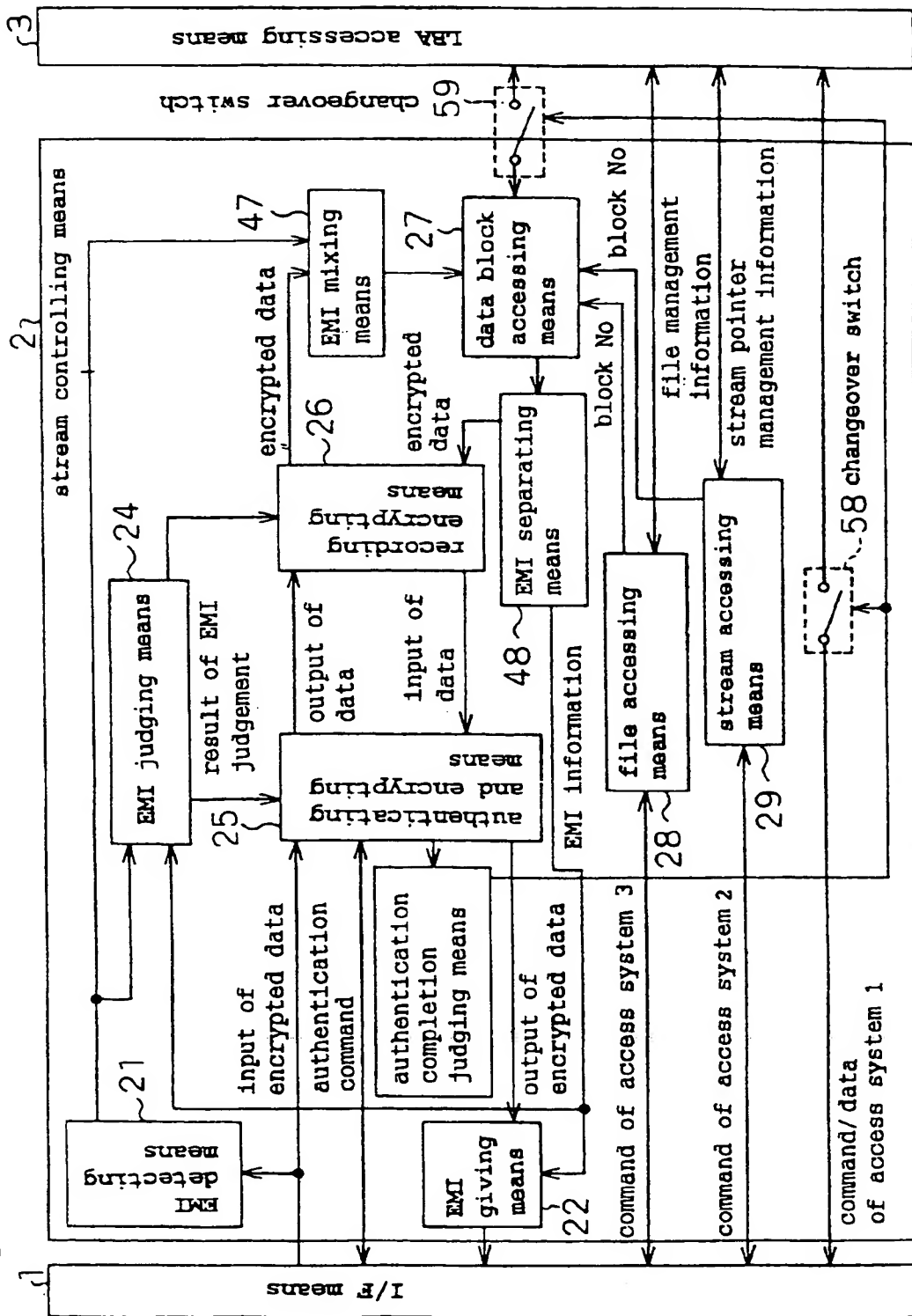


Fig. 13

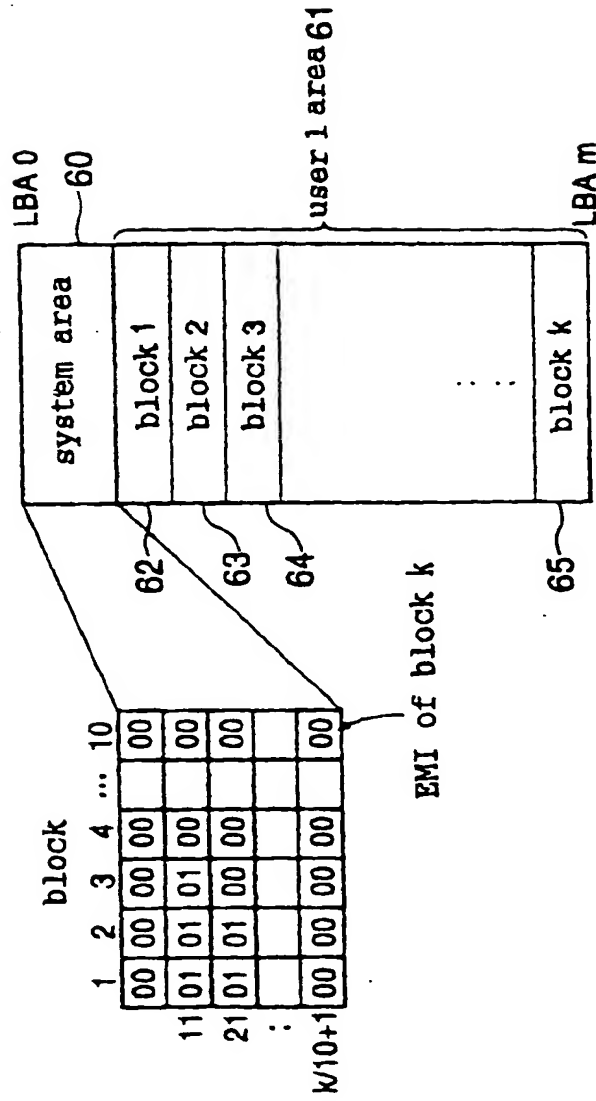


Fig. 14

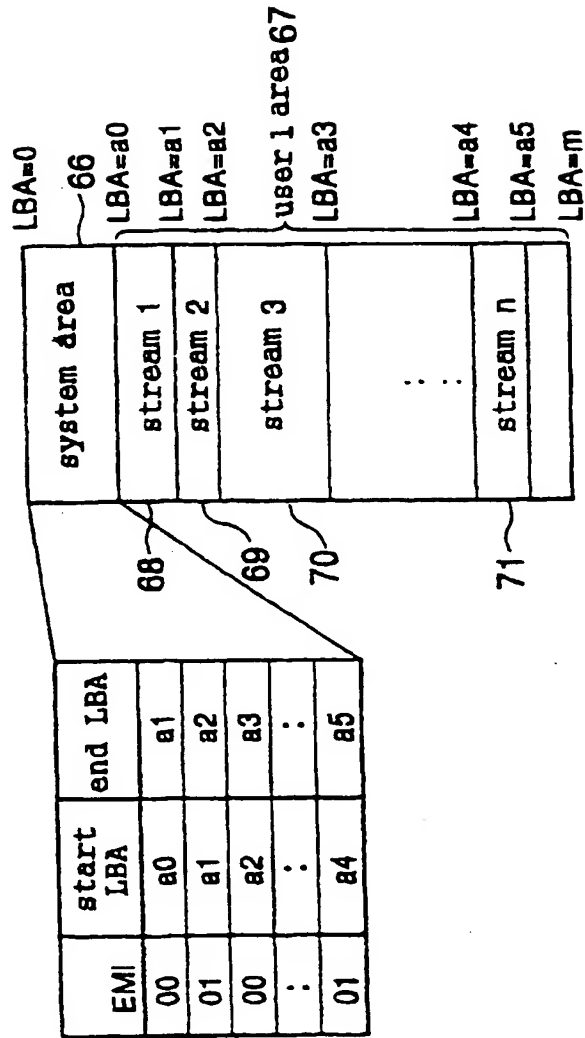


Fig. 15

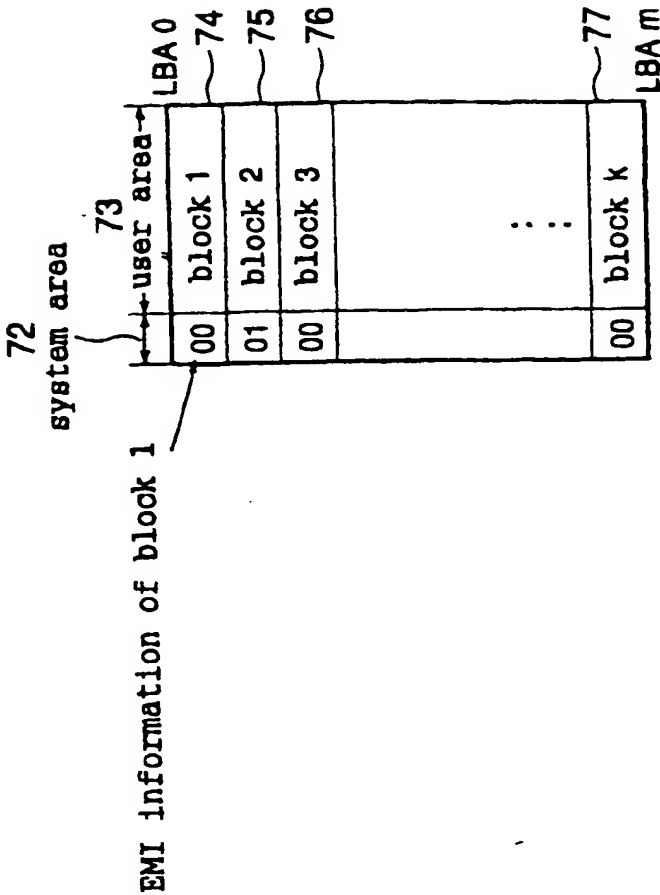


Fig. 16

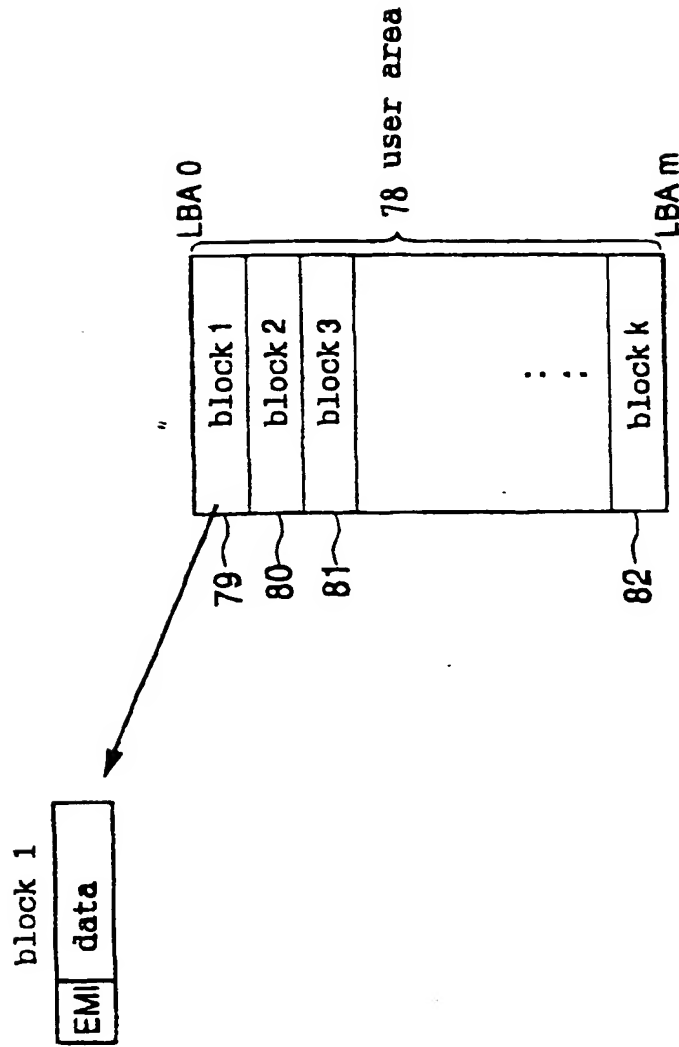


Fig. 17

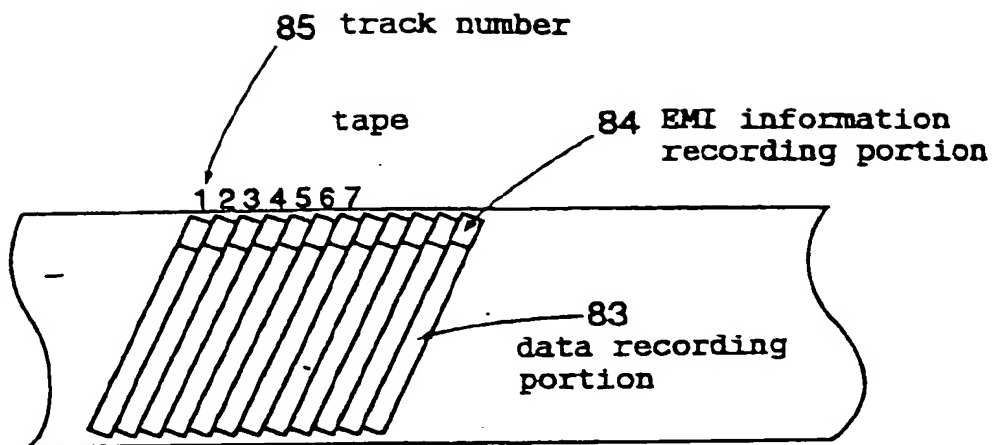


Fig. 18

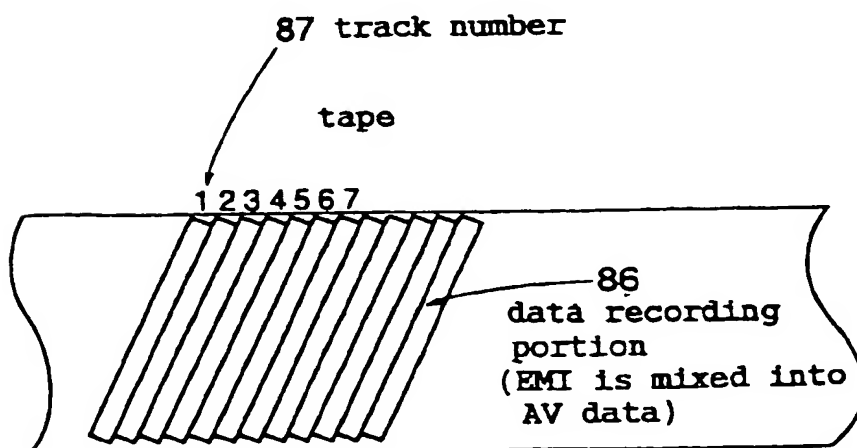


Fig. 19

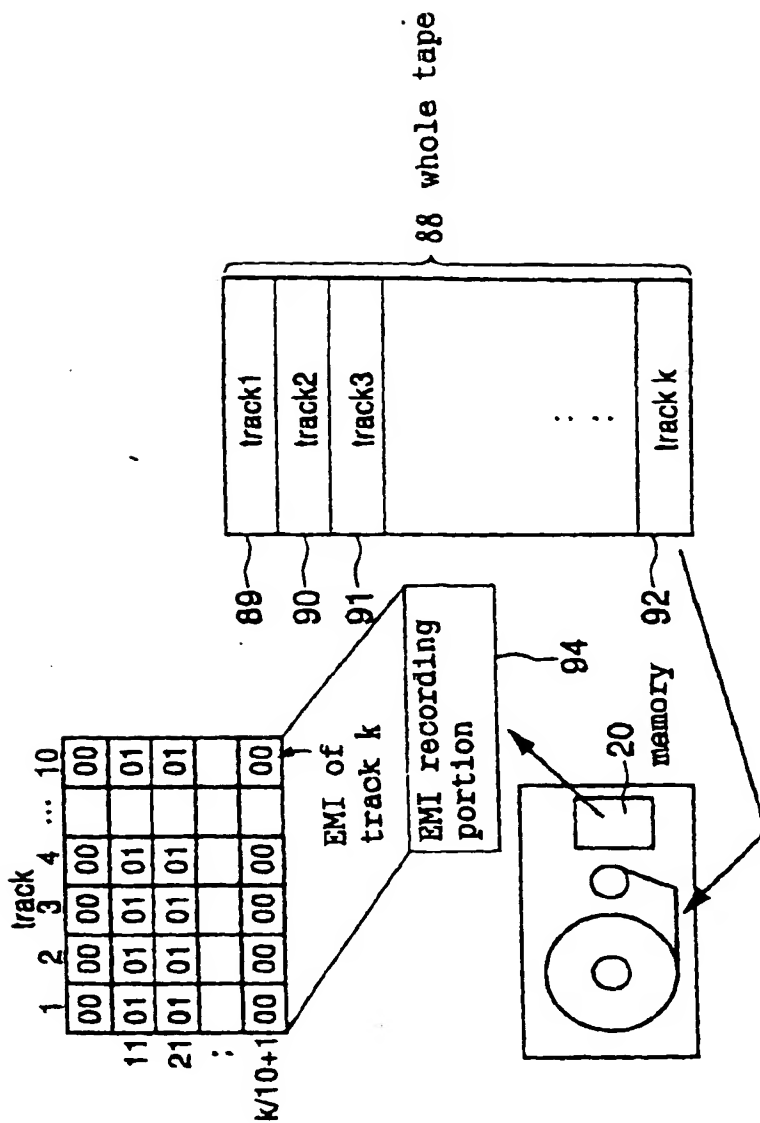


Fig. 20

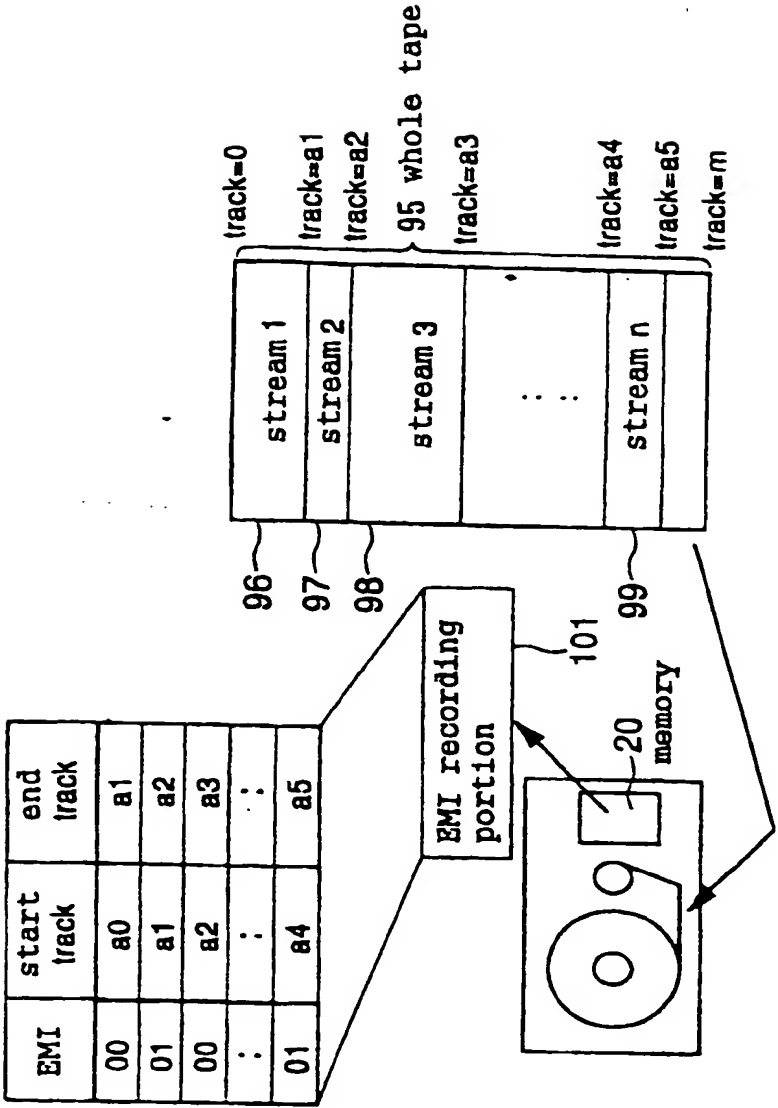
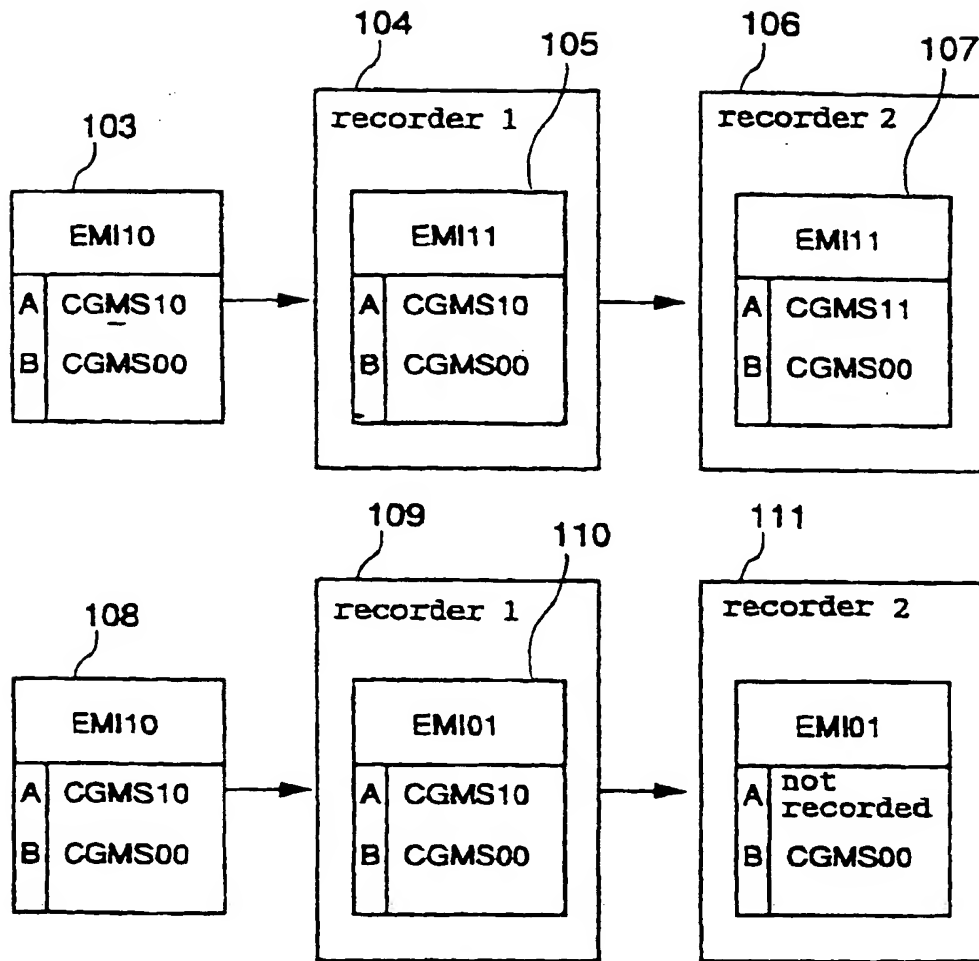


Fig. 21



103,105,107 AV data
108,110, AV data

Fig. 22

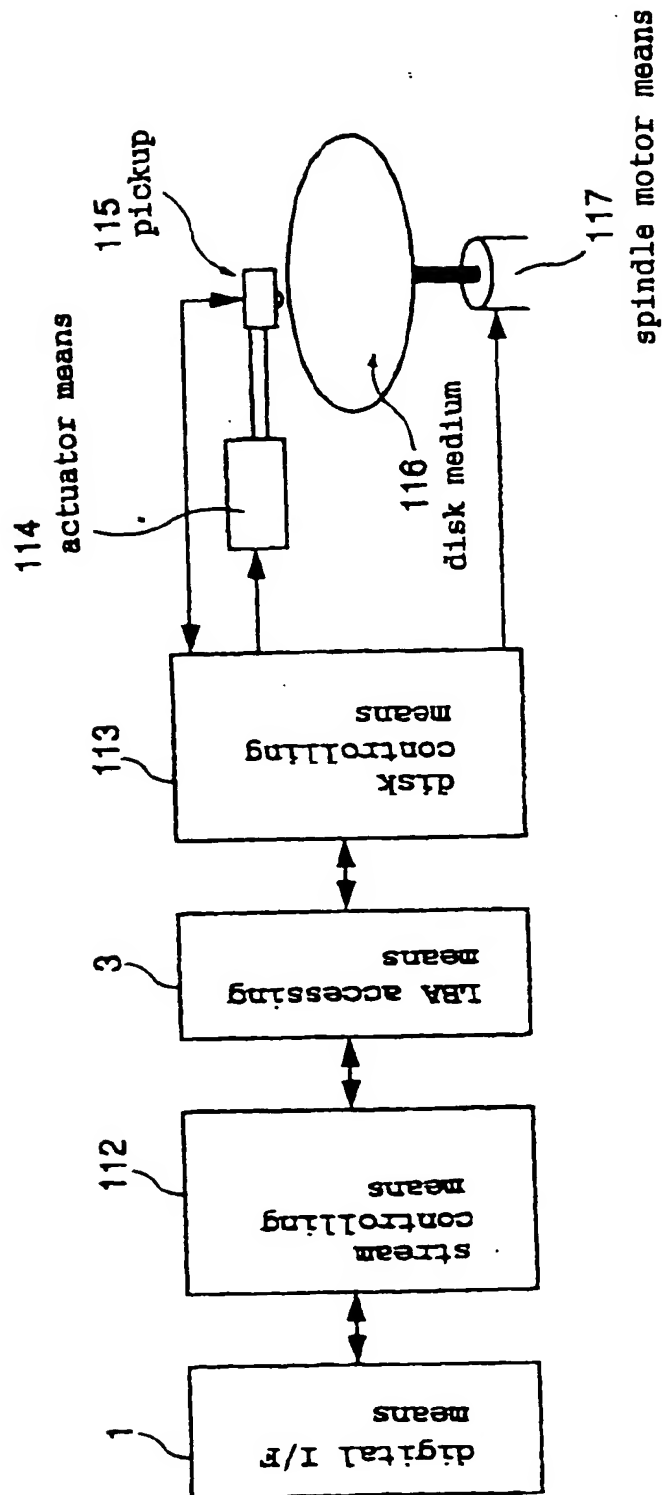


Fig. 23

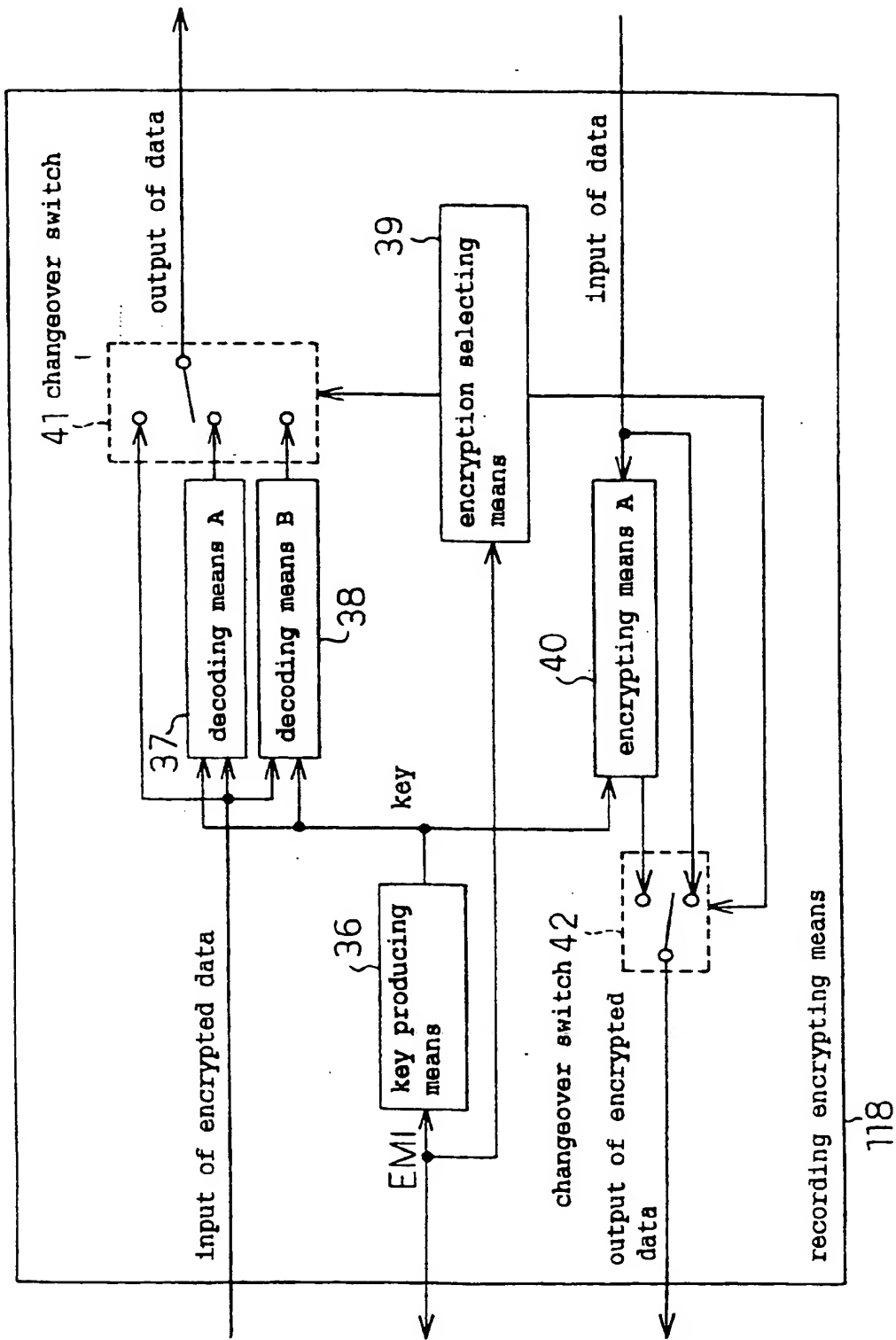


Fig. 24

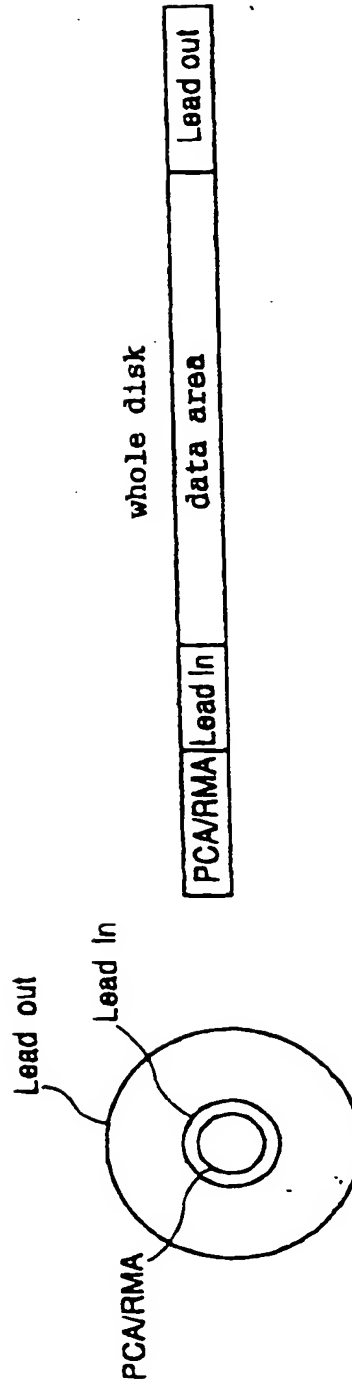


Fig. 25

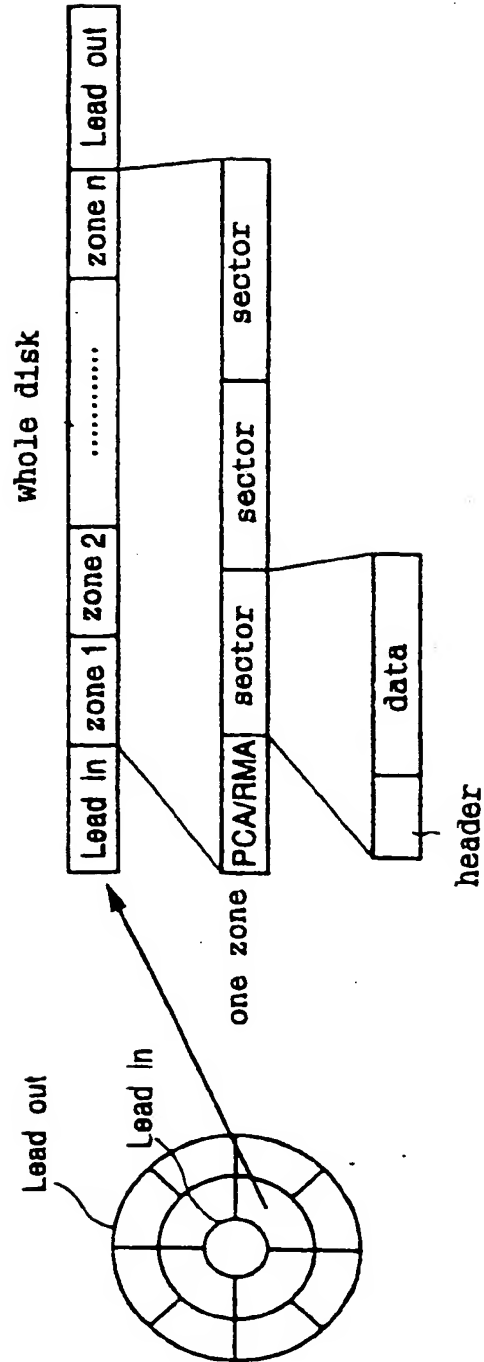


Fig. 26

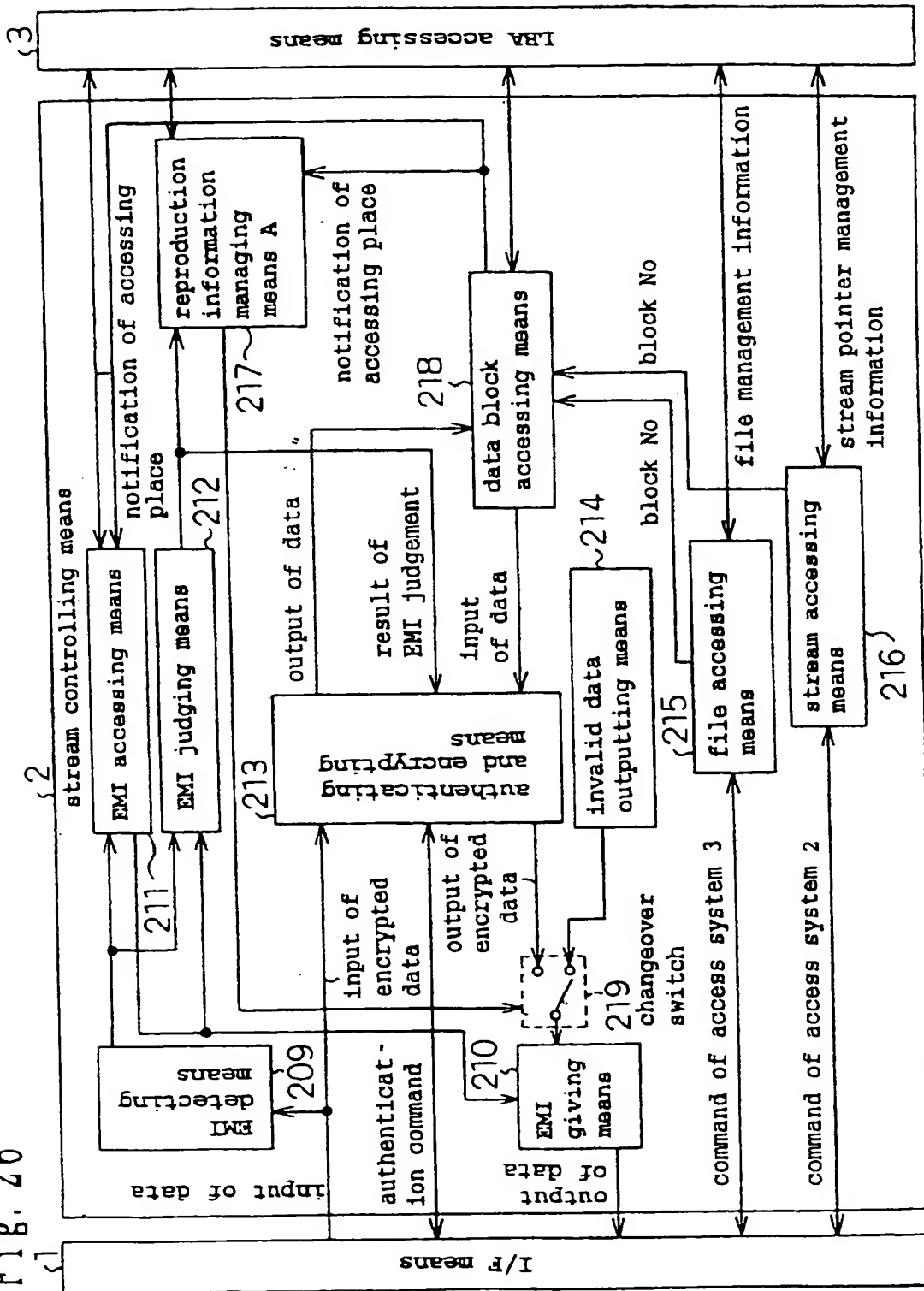


Fig. 27

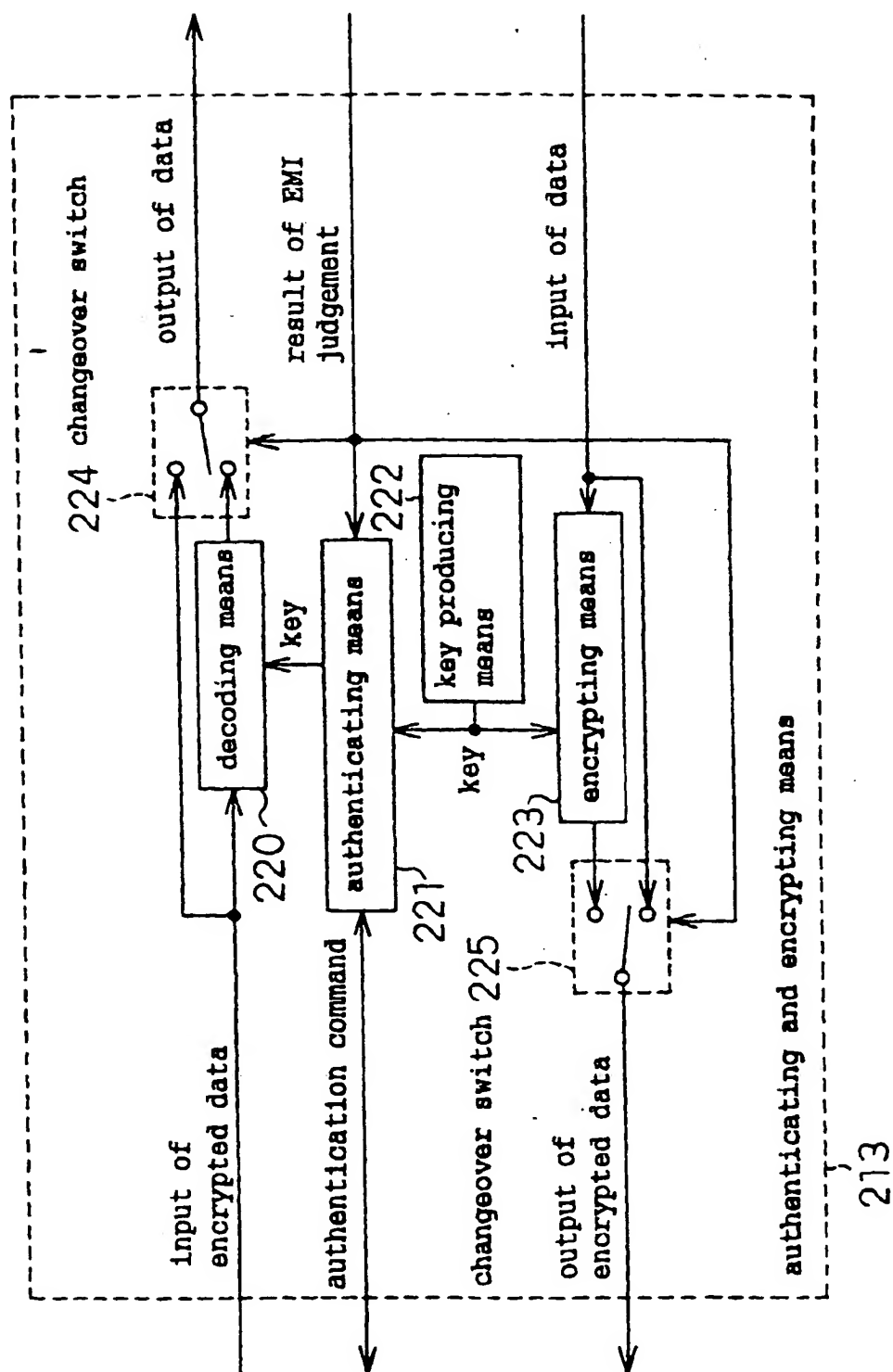


Fig. 28

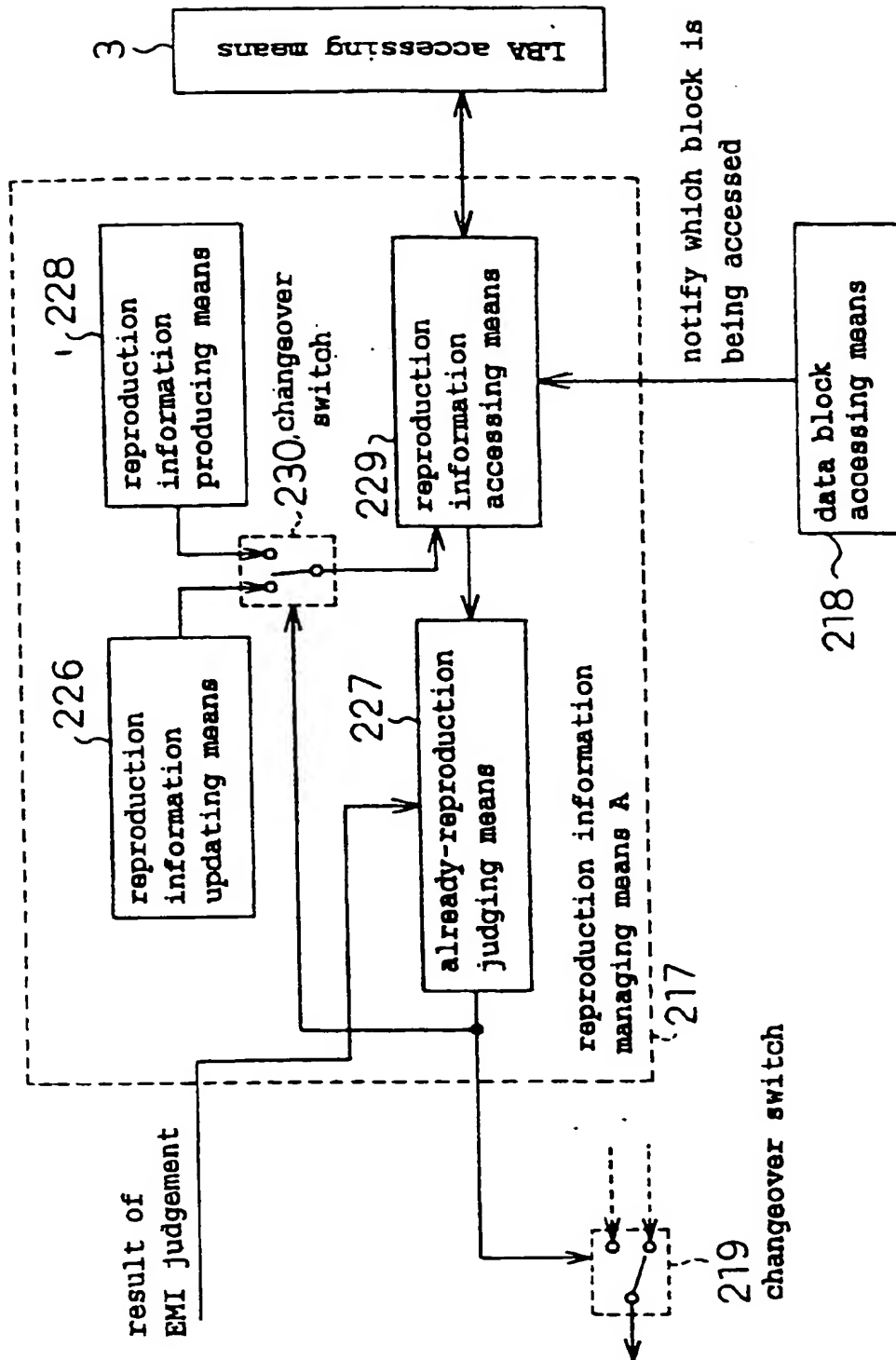


Fig. 29

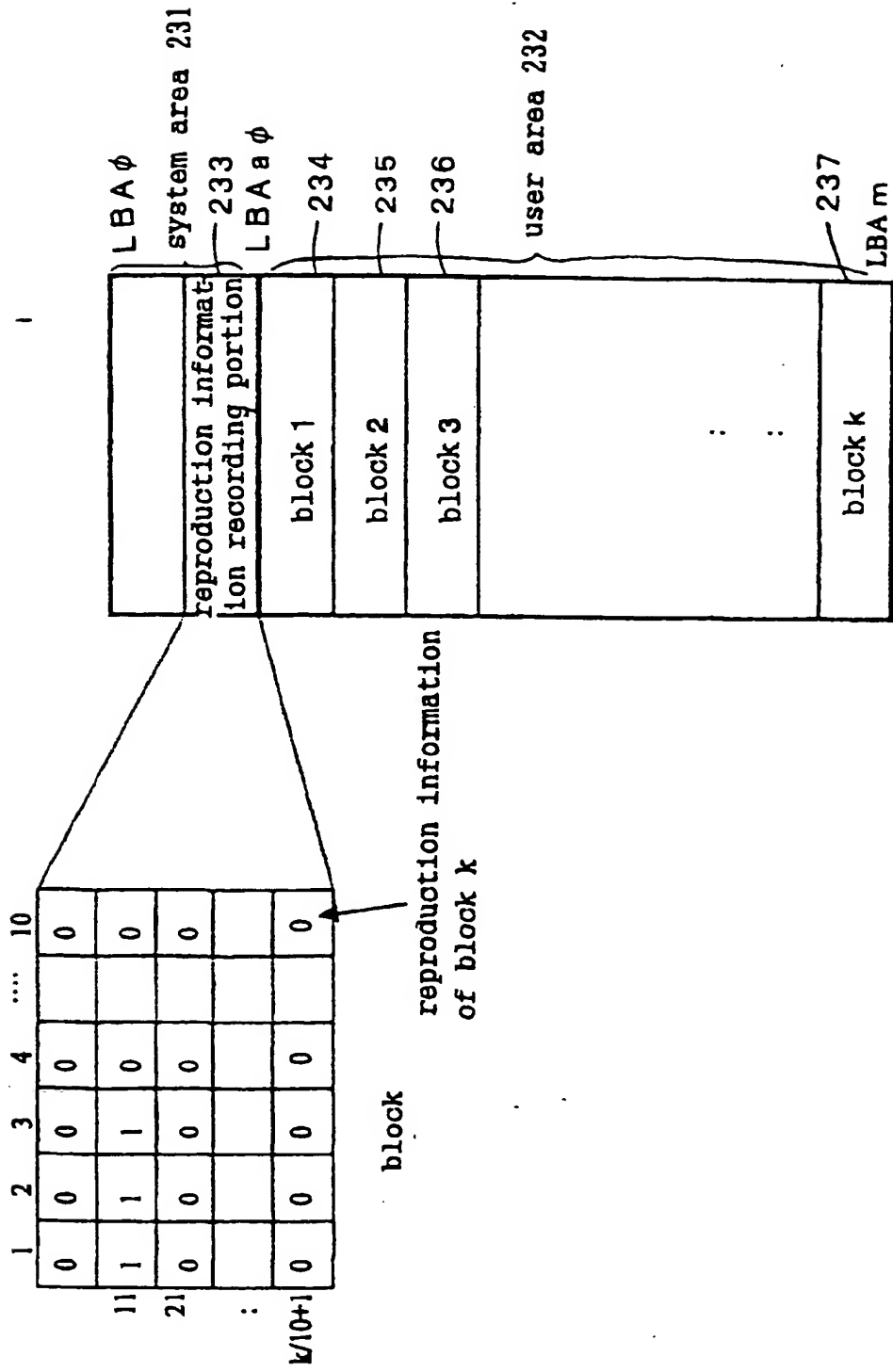


Fig. 30

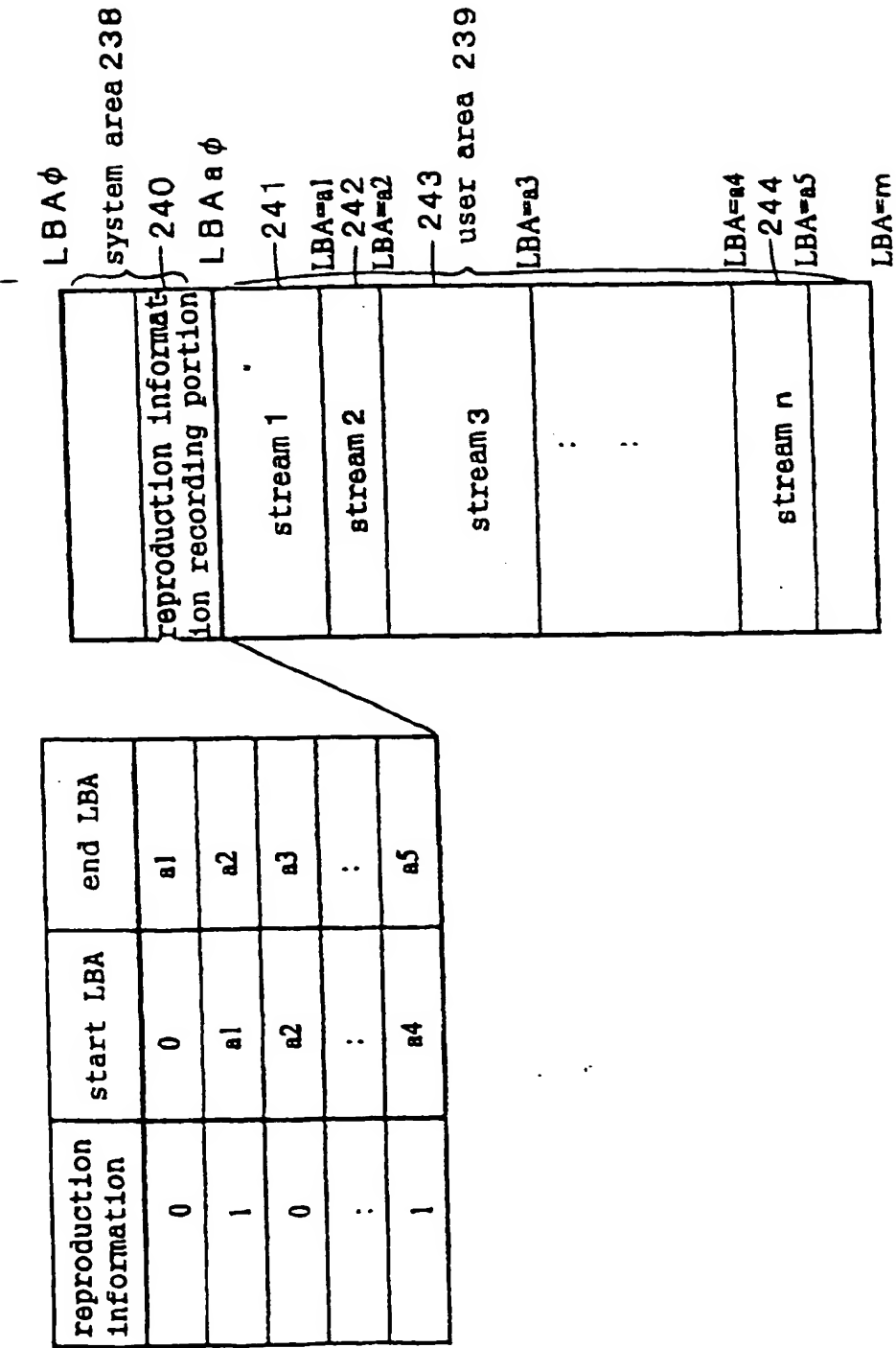


Fig. 31

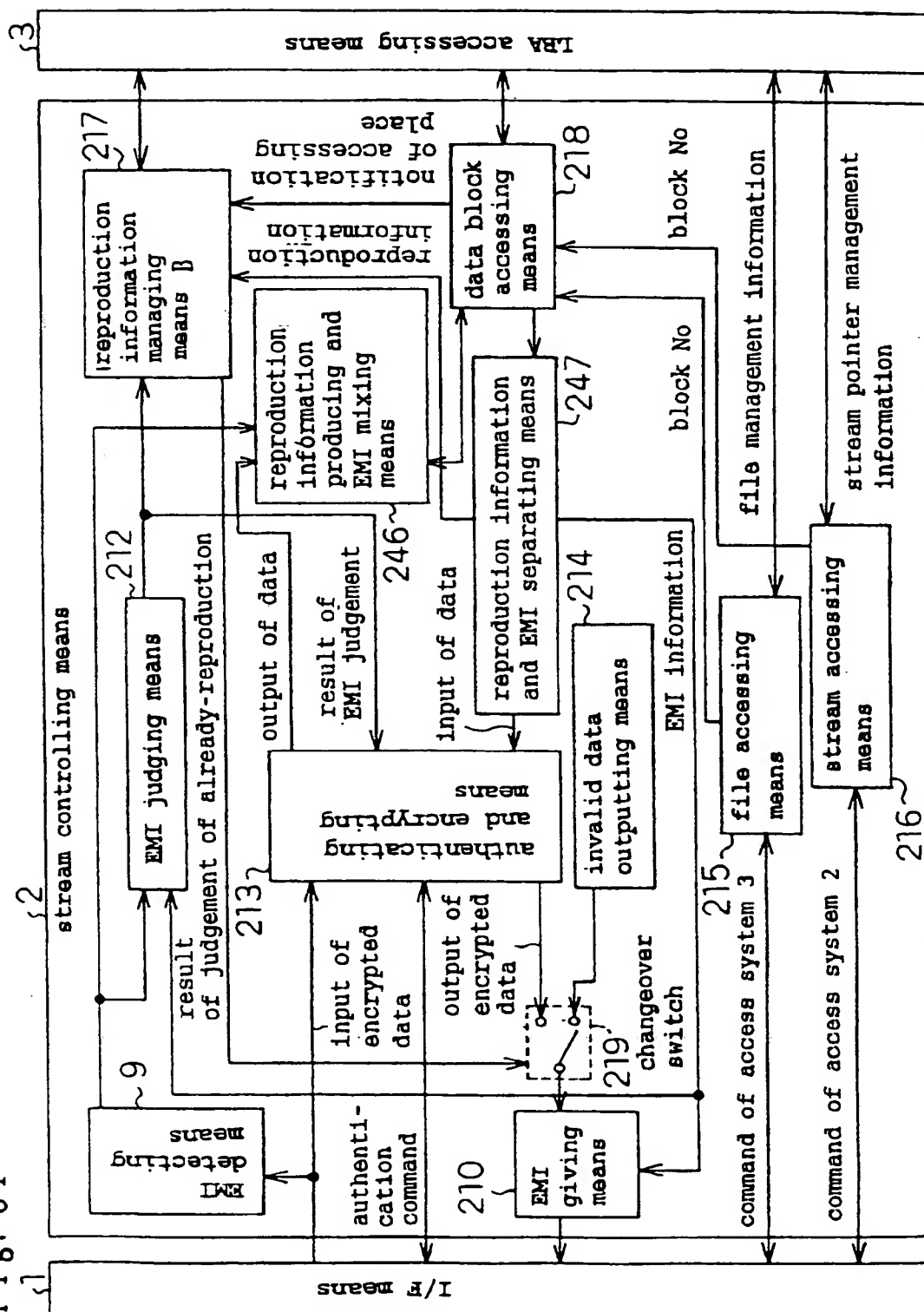


Fig. 32

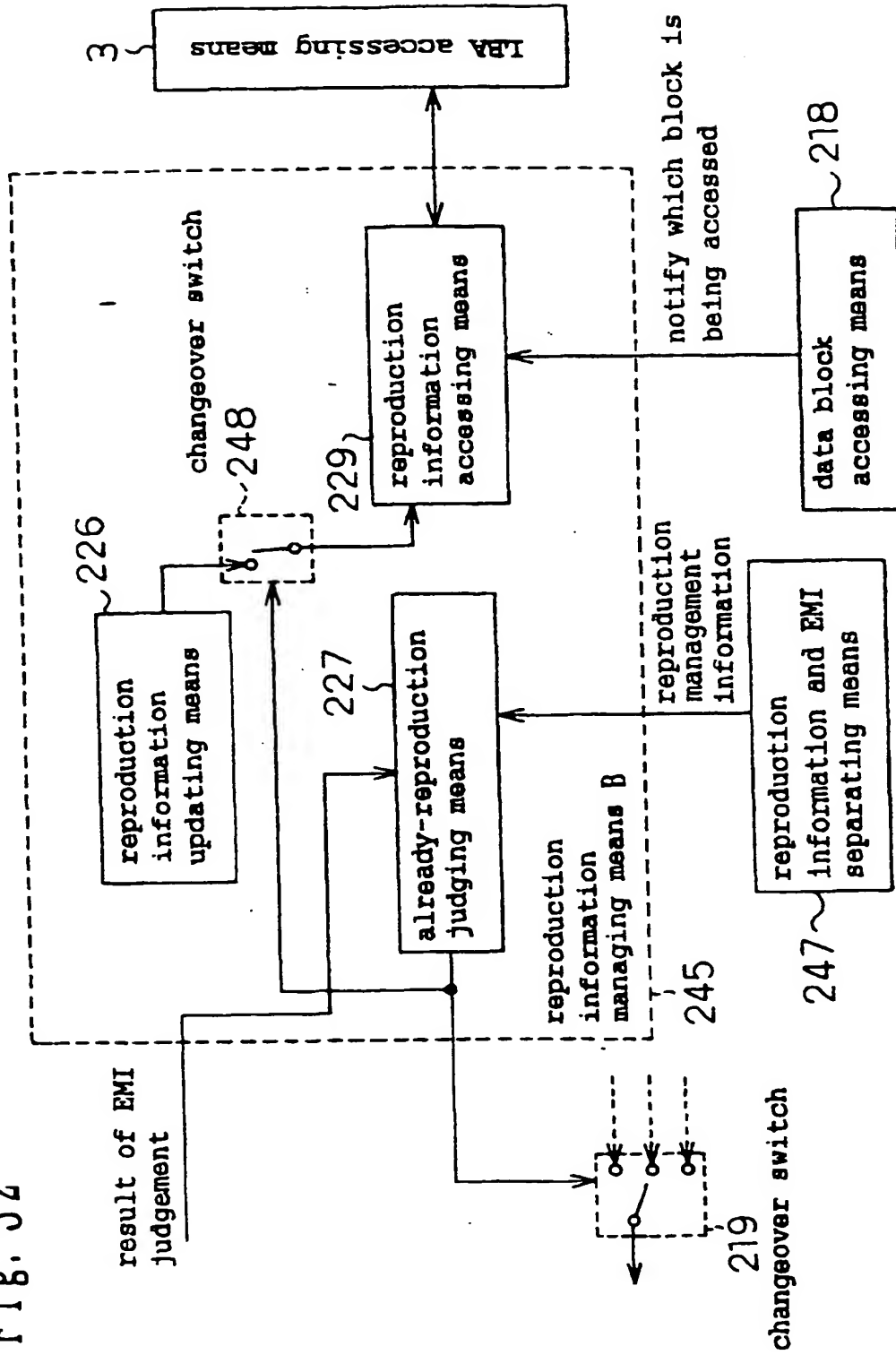


Fig. 33

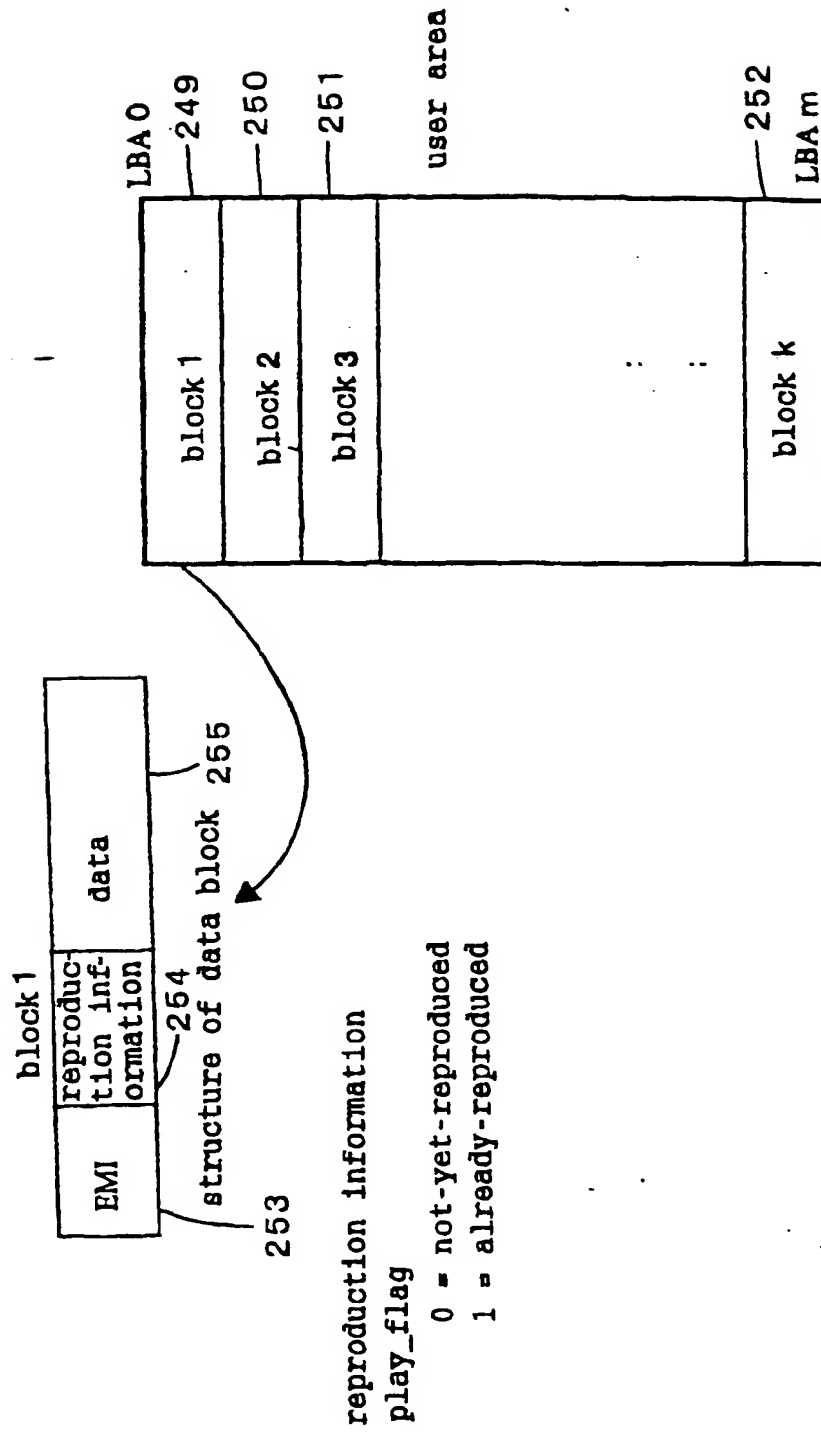


Fig. 34

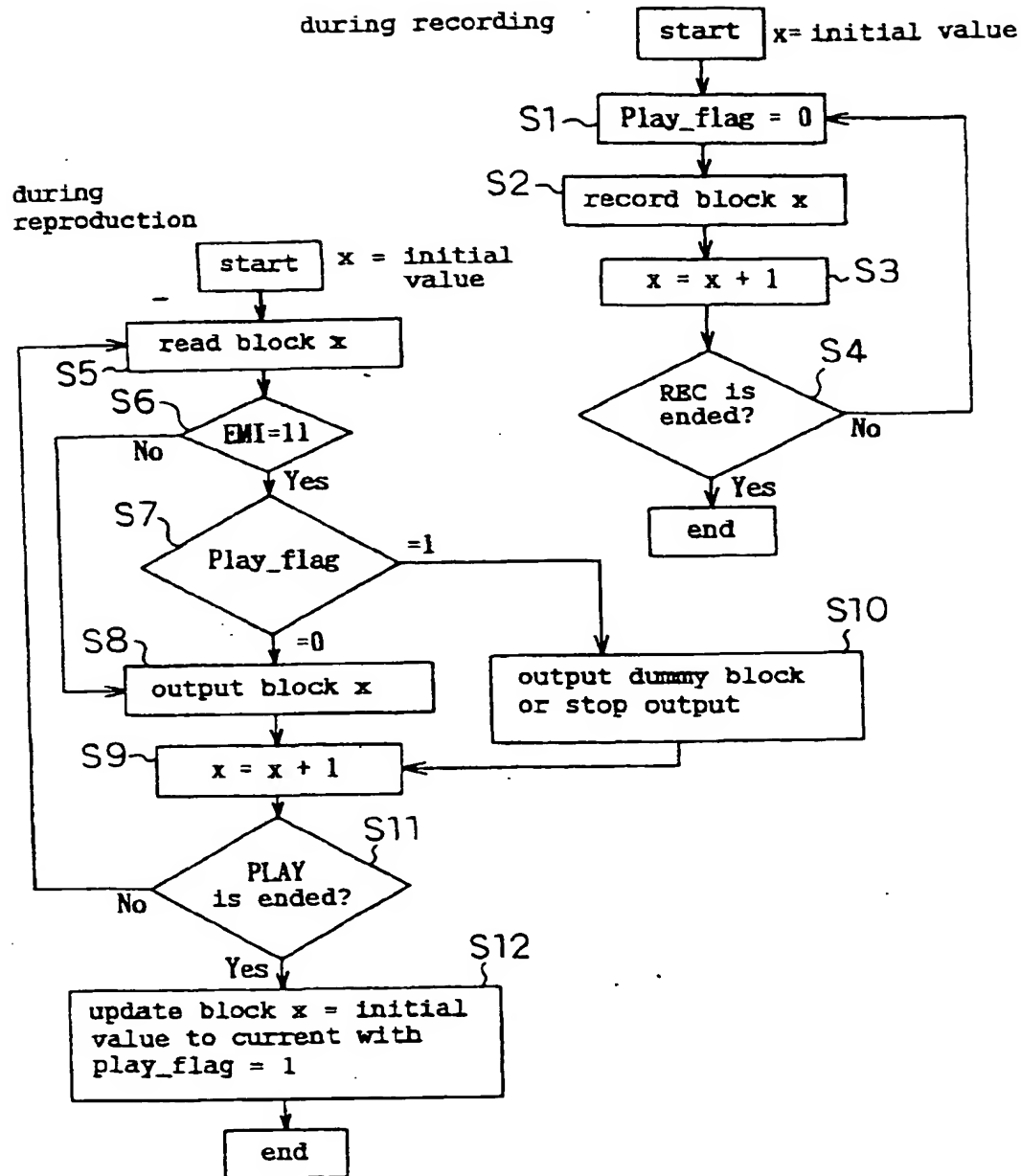


Fig. 35

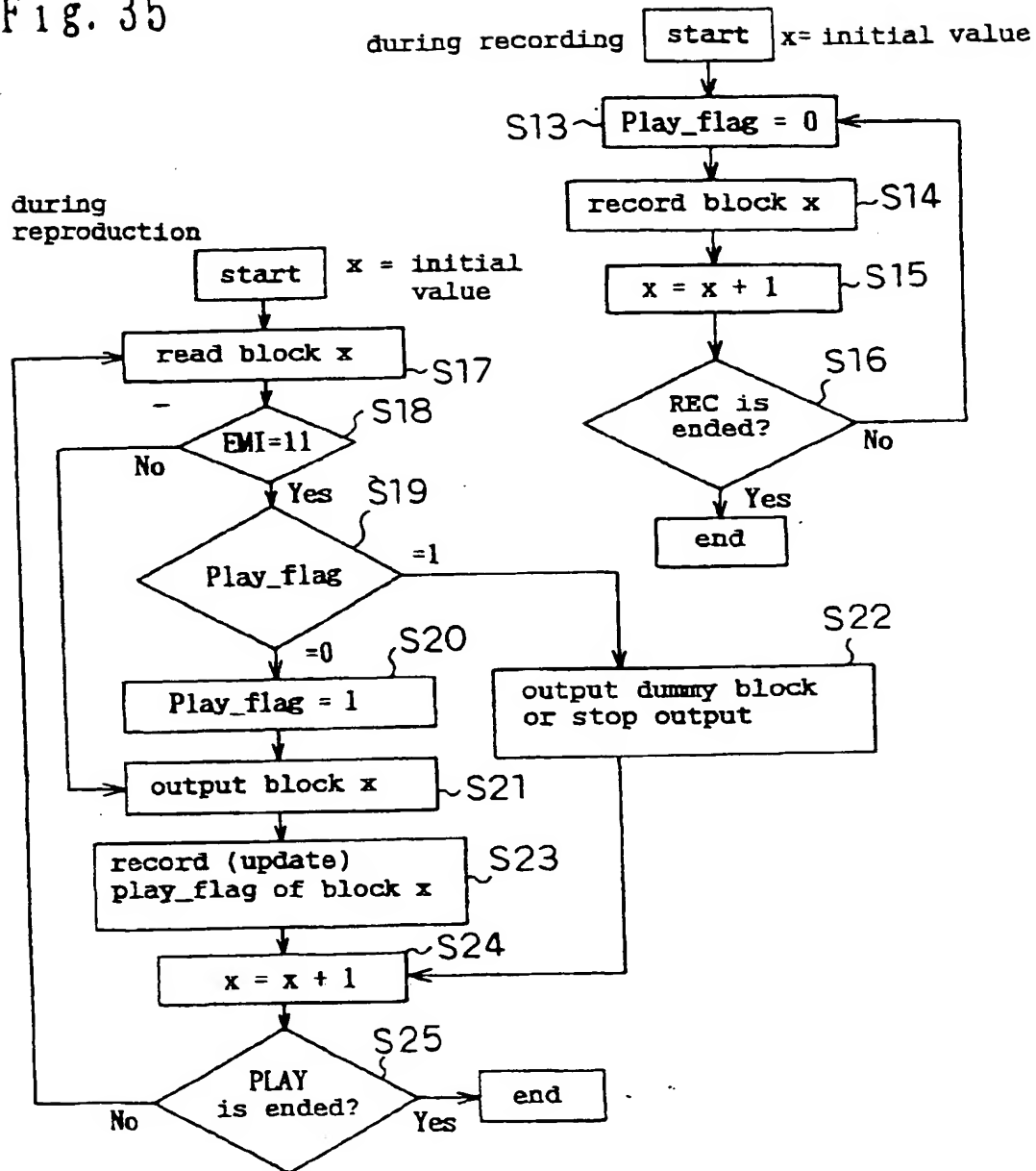


Fig. 36

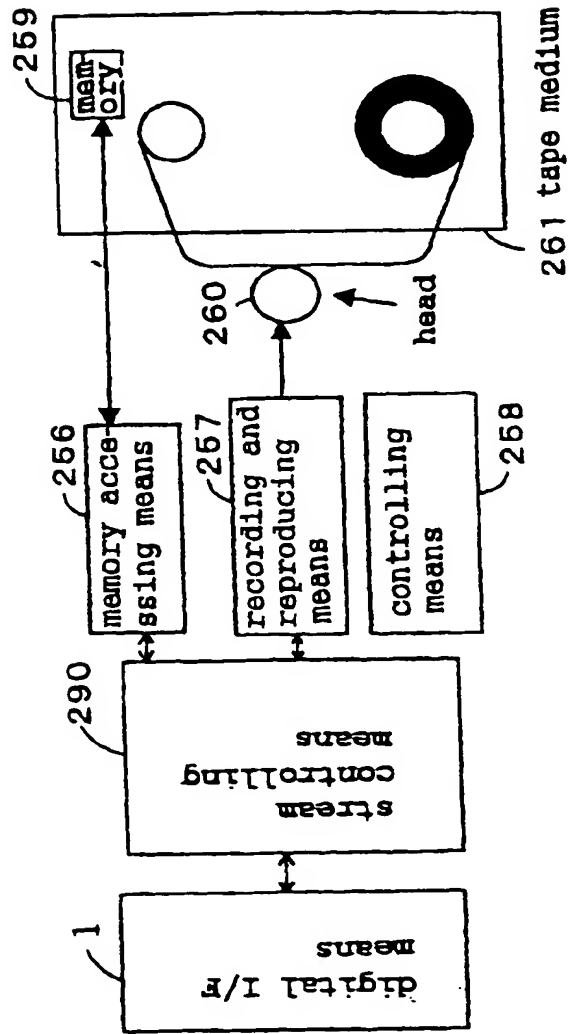


Fig. 37

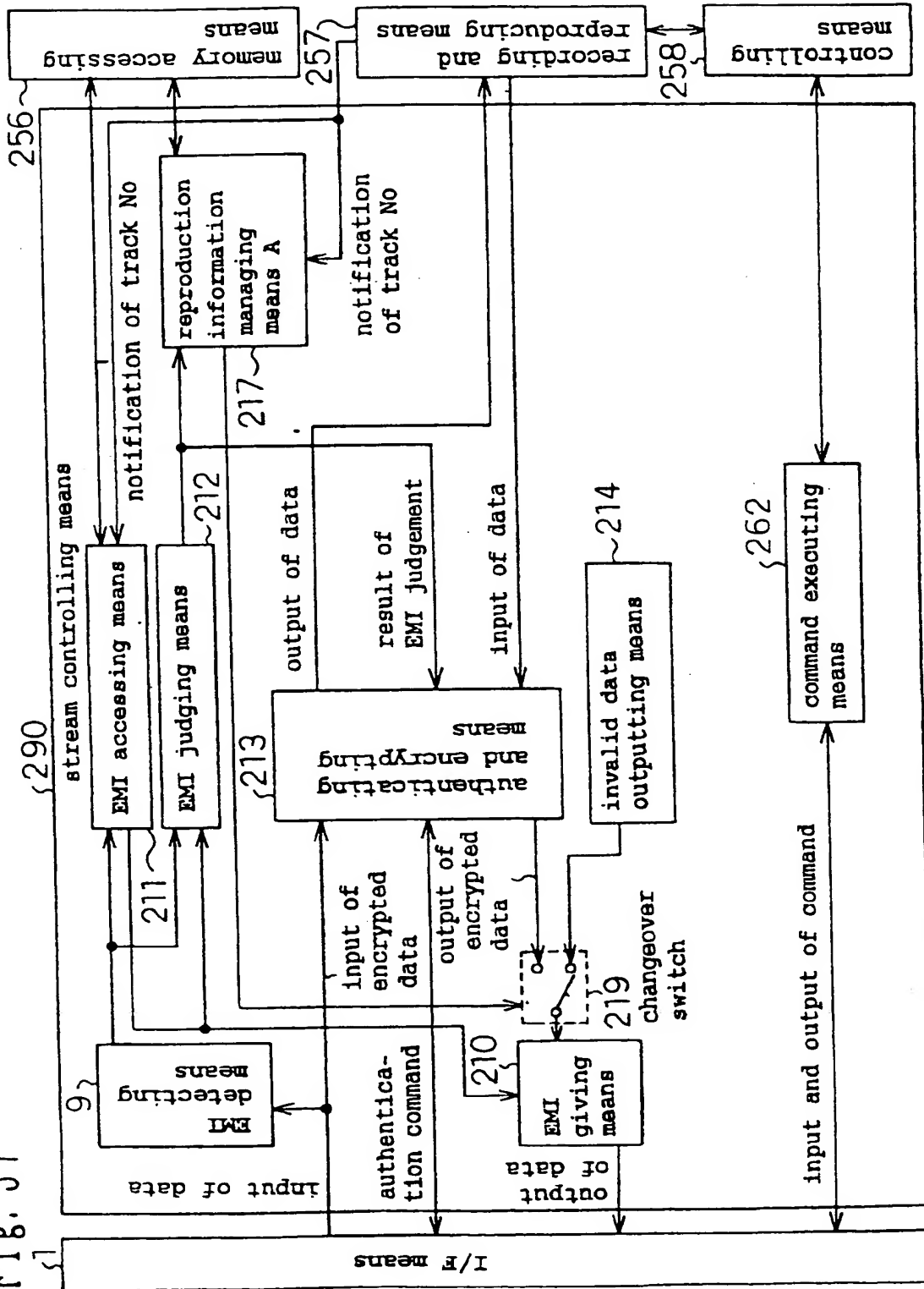


Fig. 38

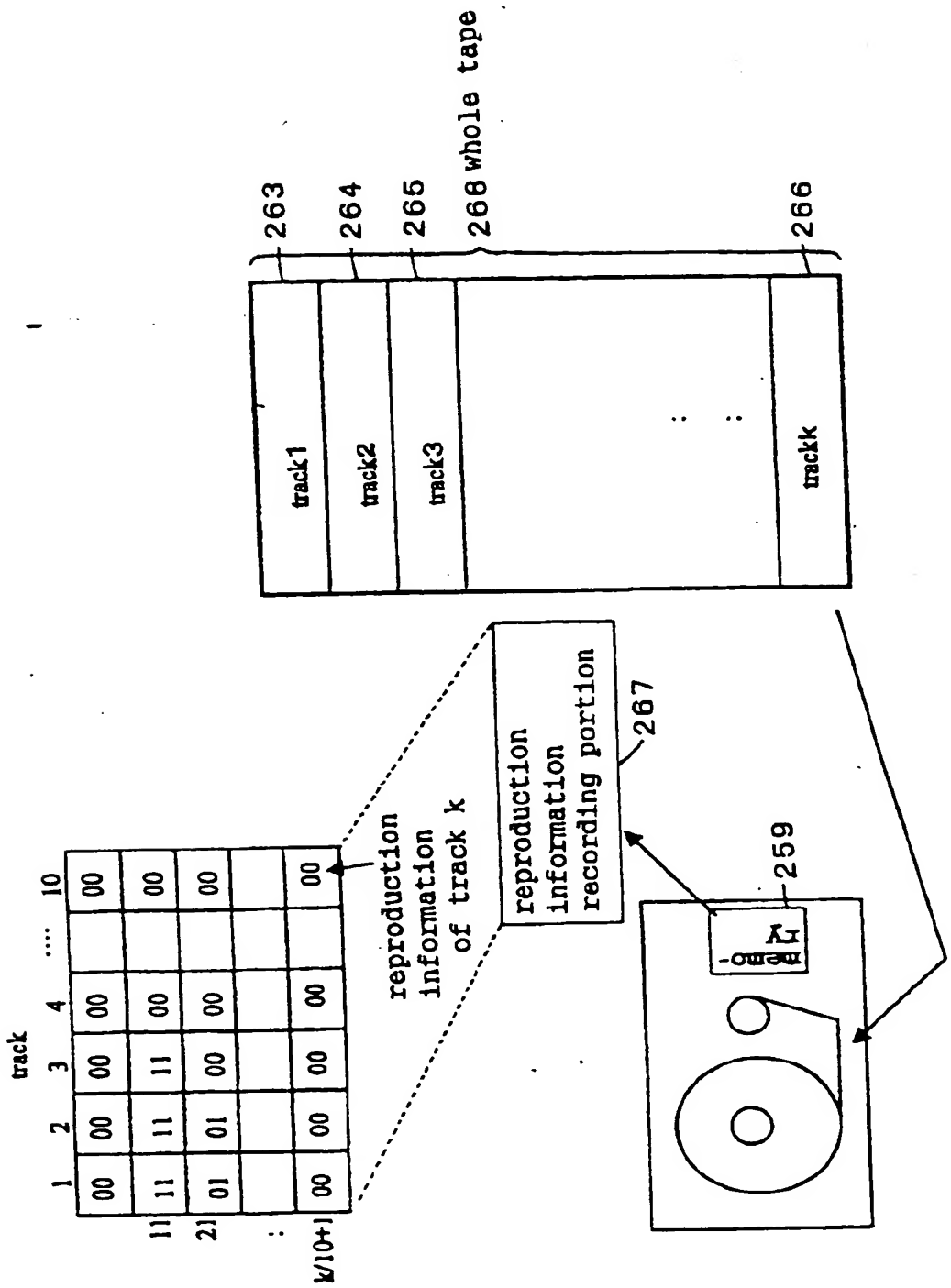


Fig. 39

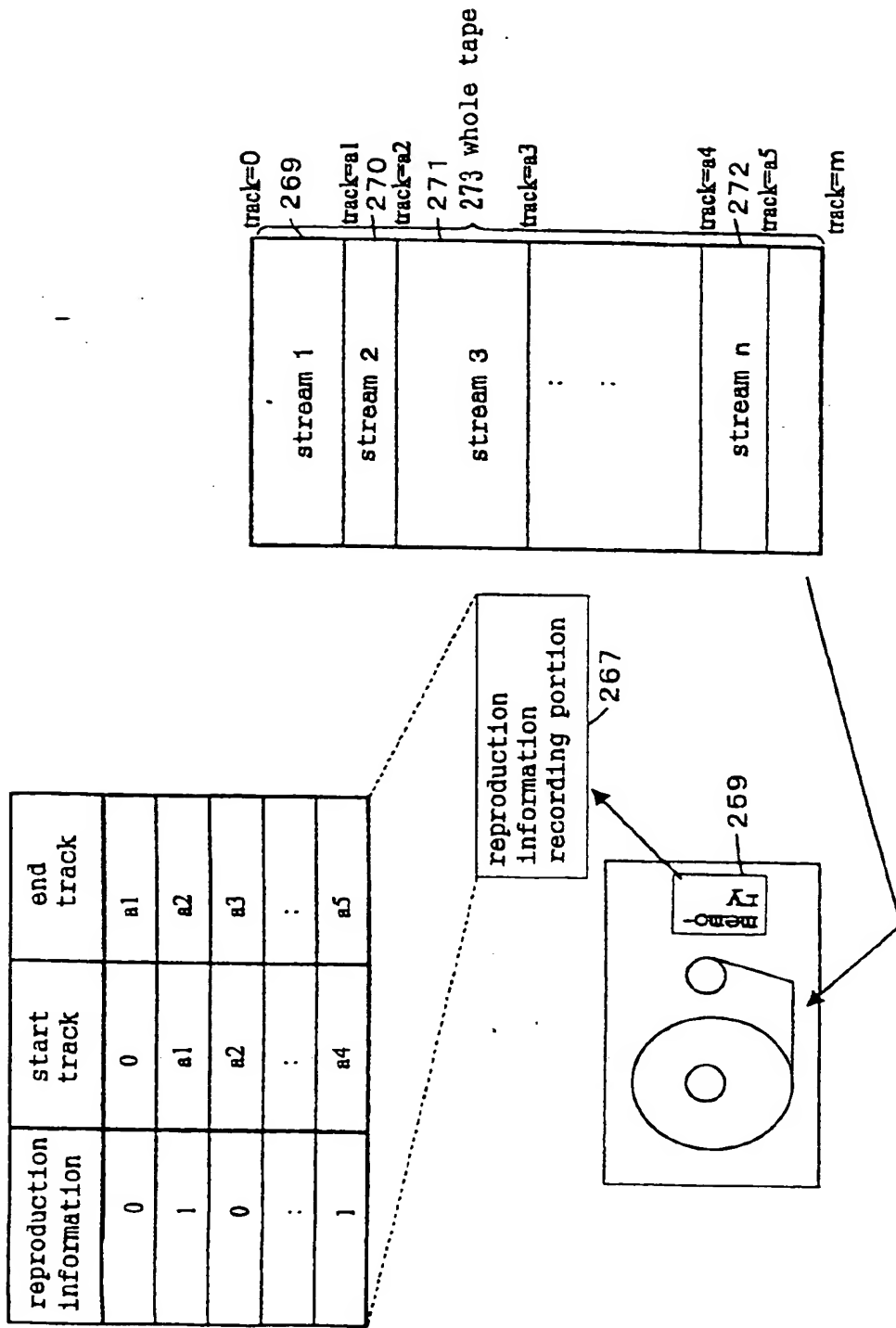


Fig. 40

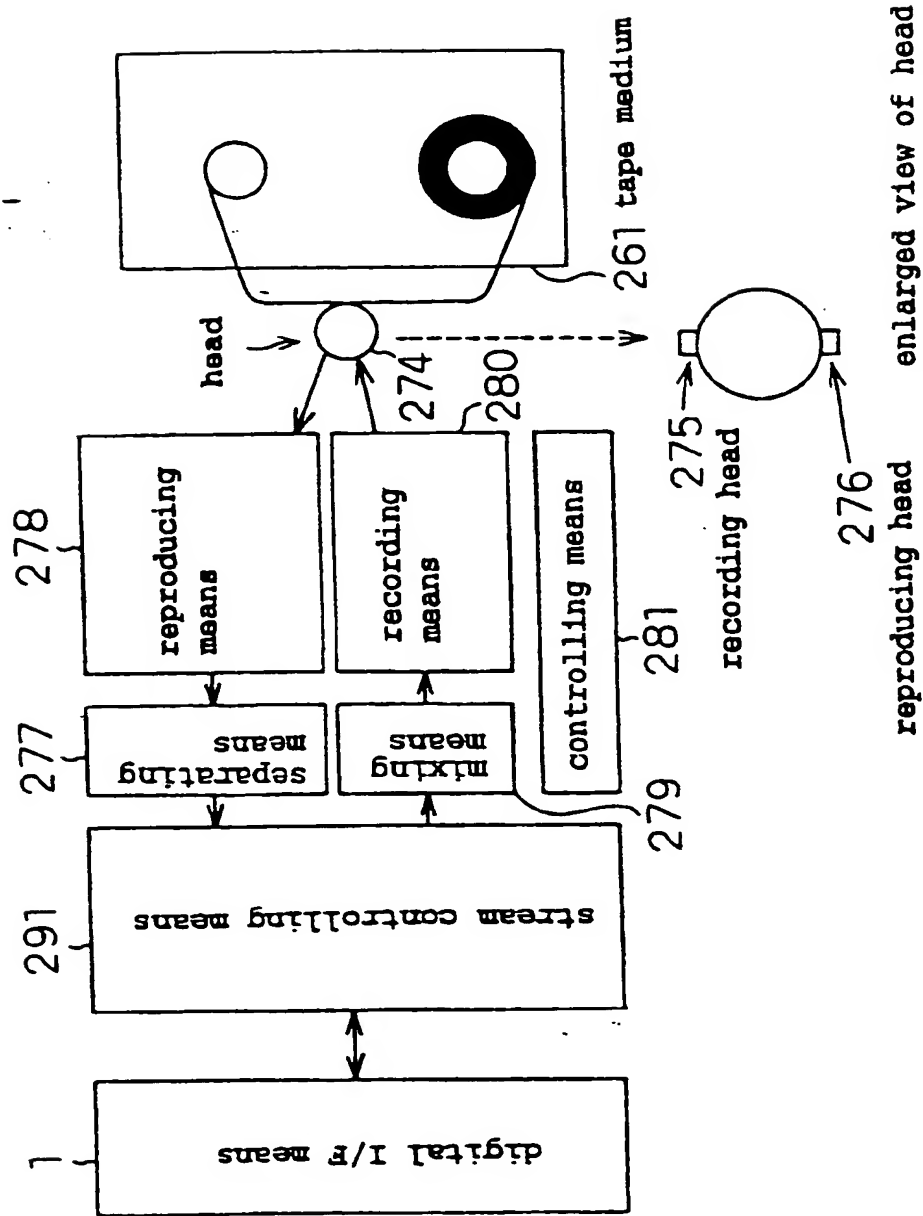


Fig. 41

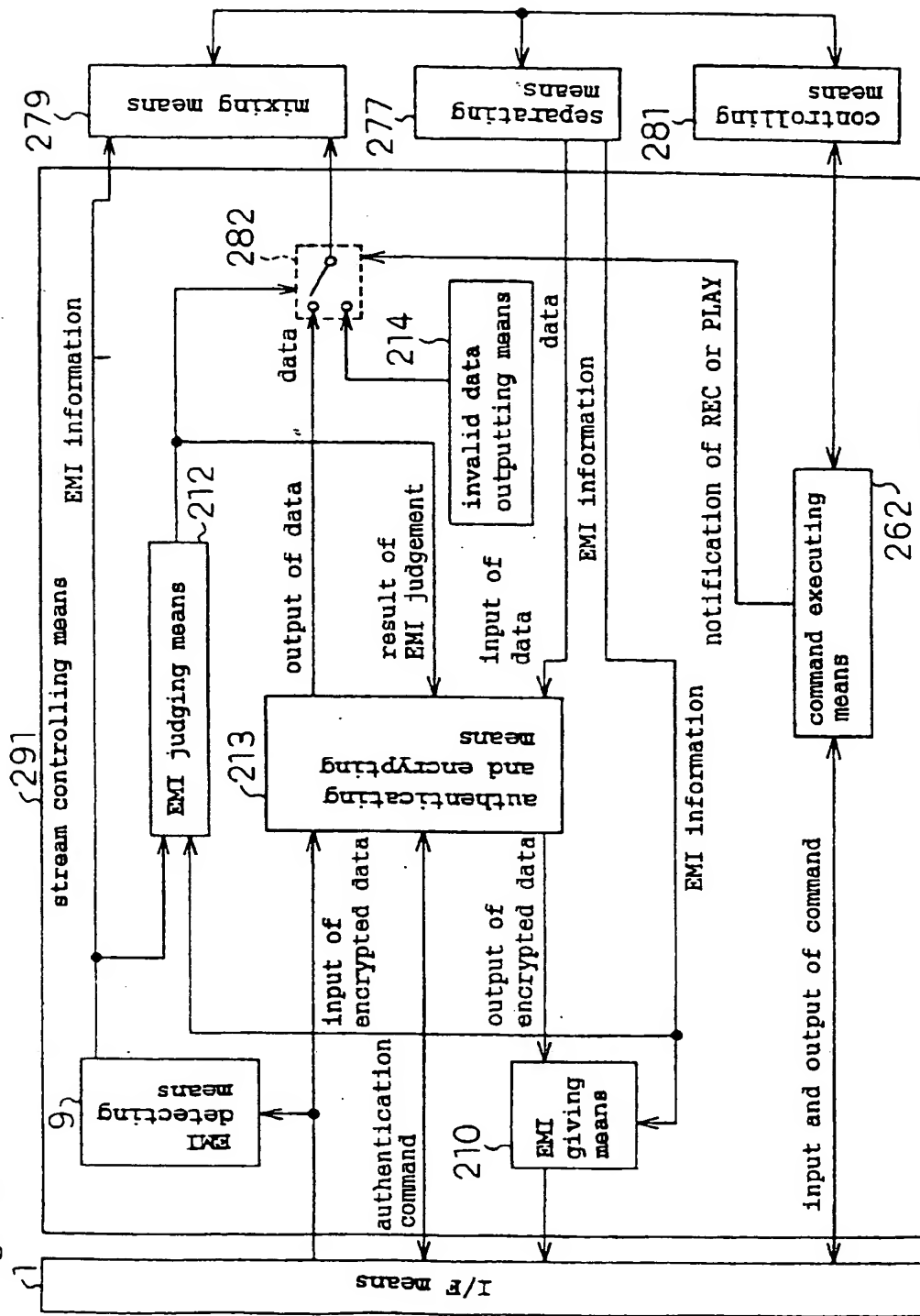


Fig. 42

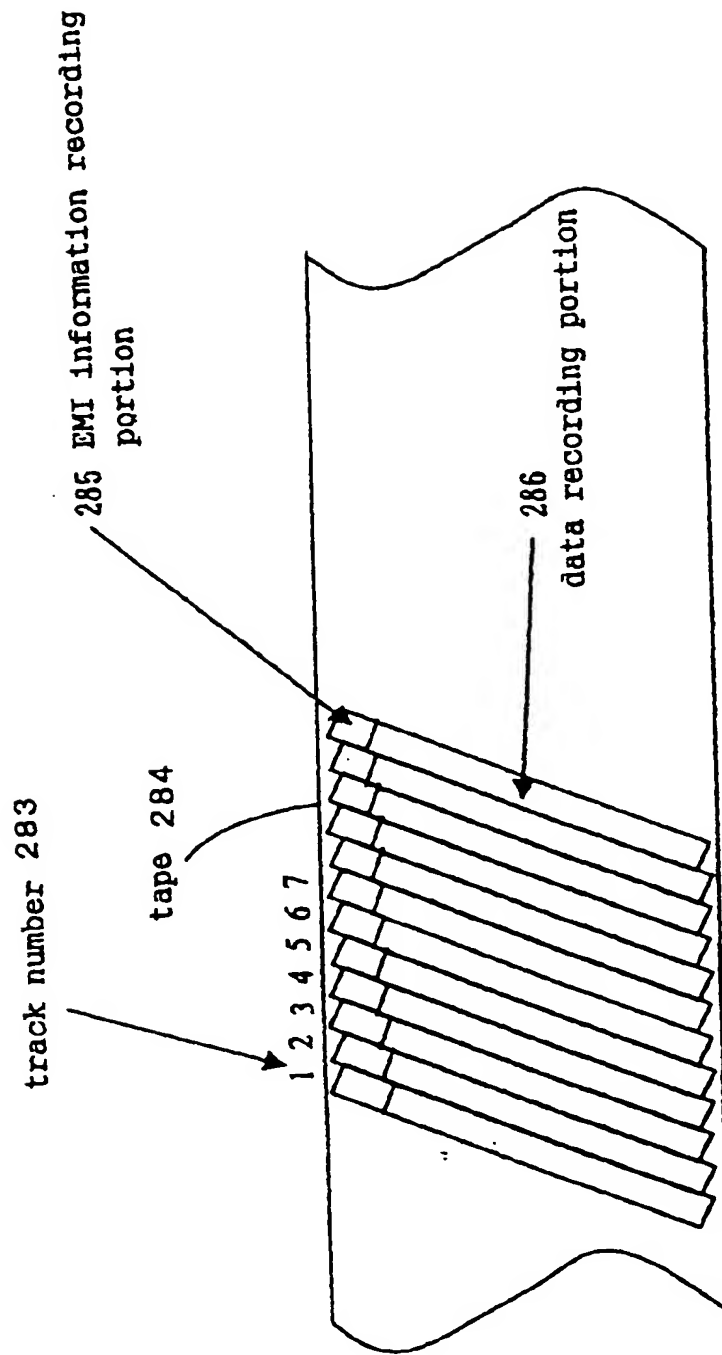


Fig. 43

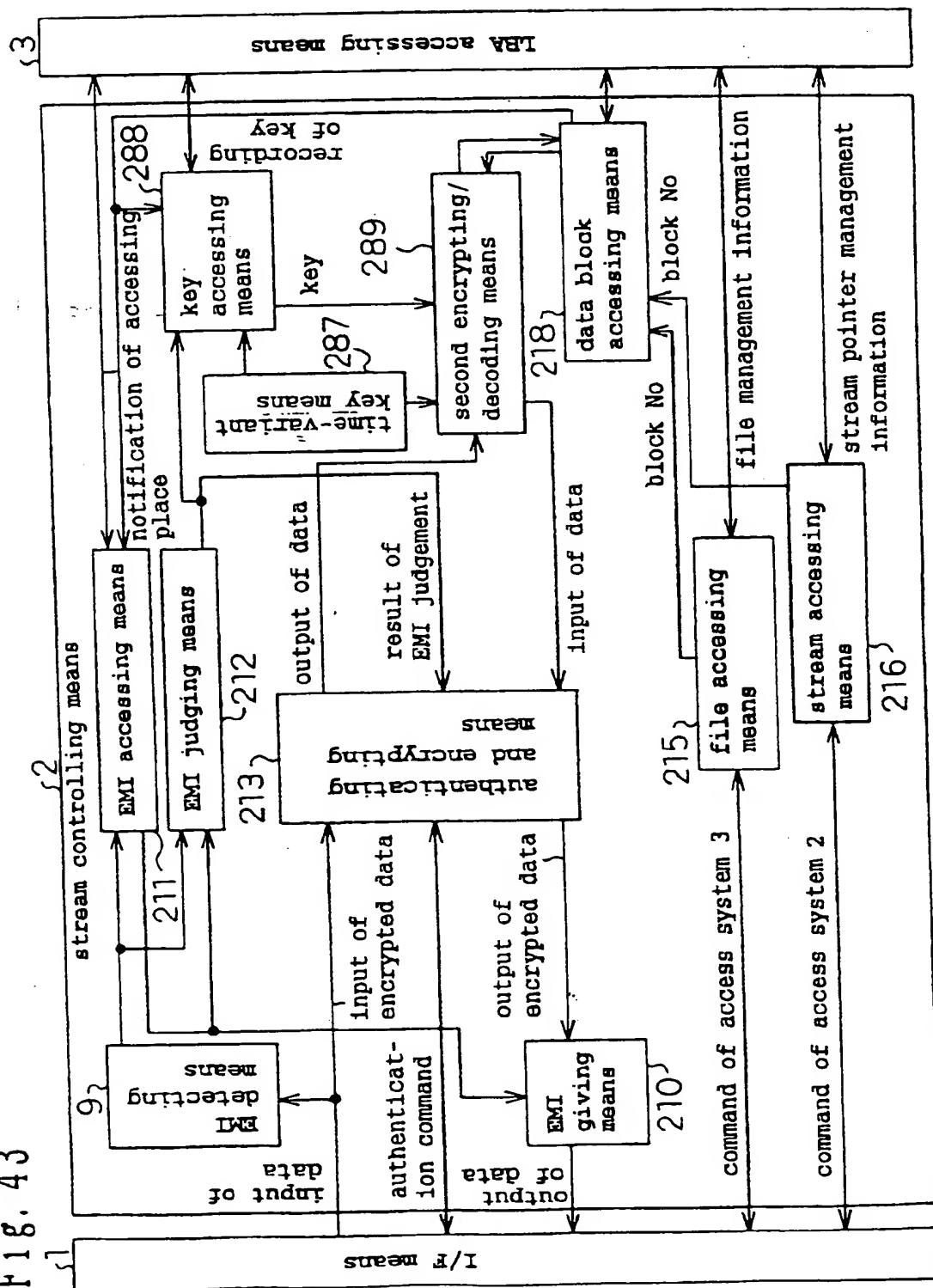


Fig. 44

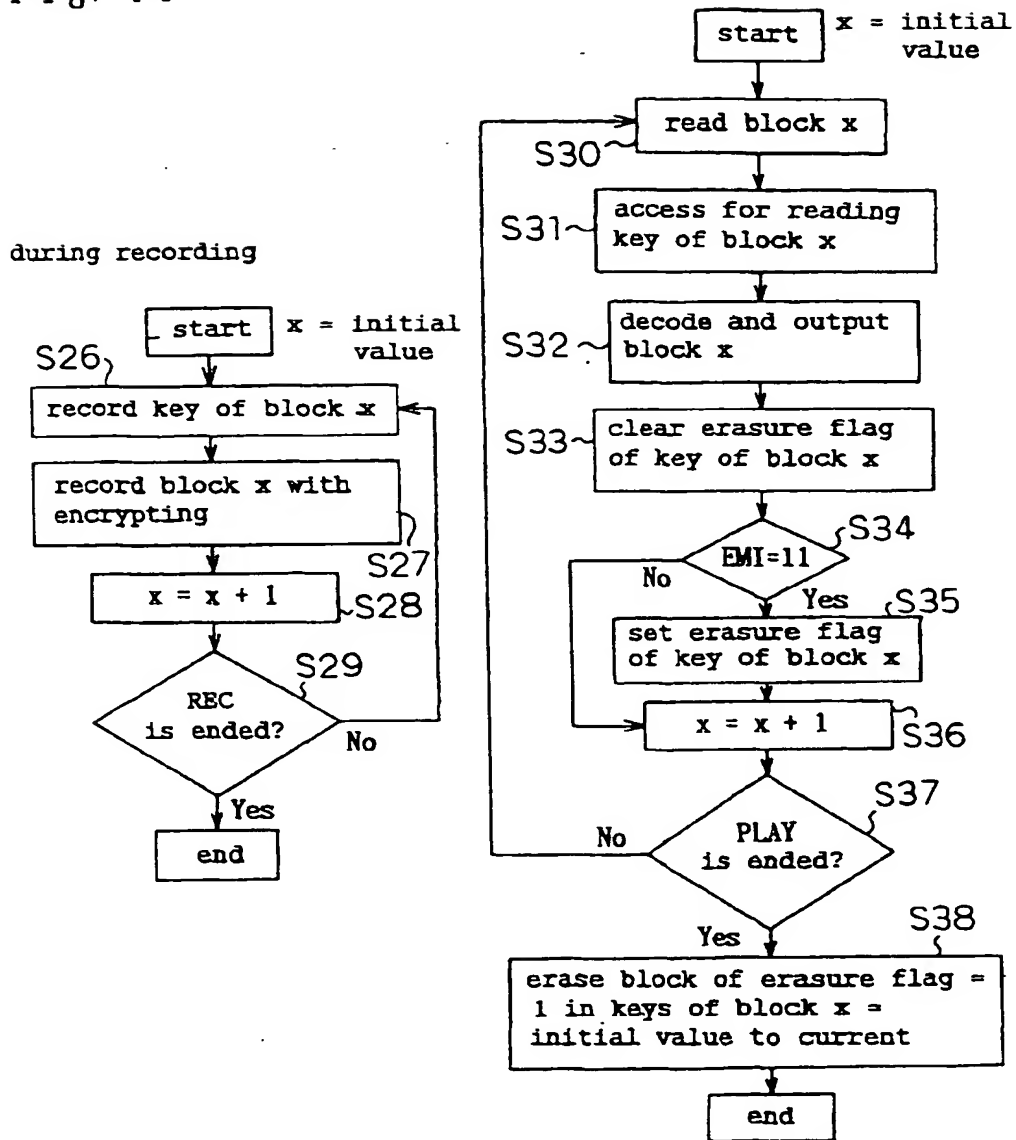


Fig. 45

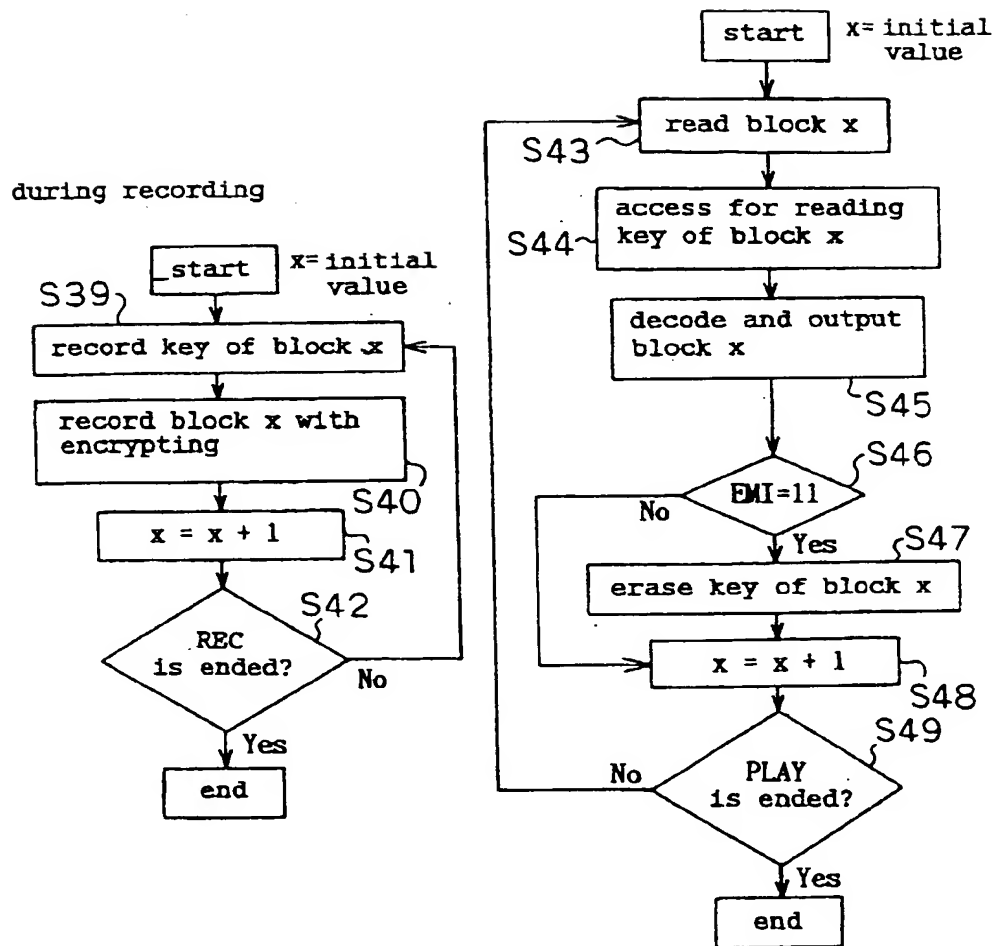
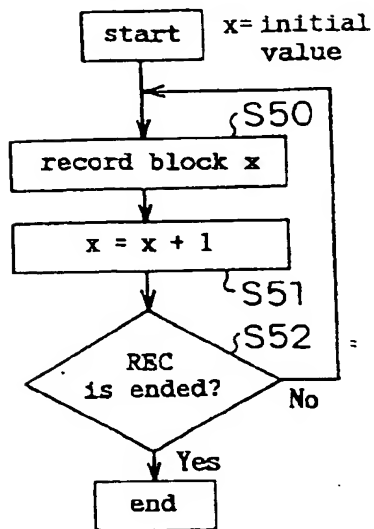


Fig. 46

during recording



during reproduction

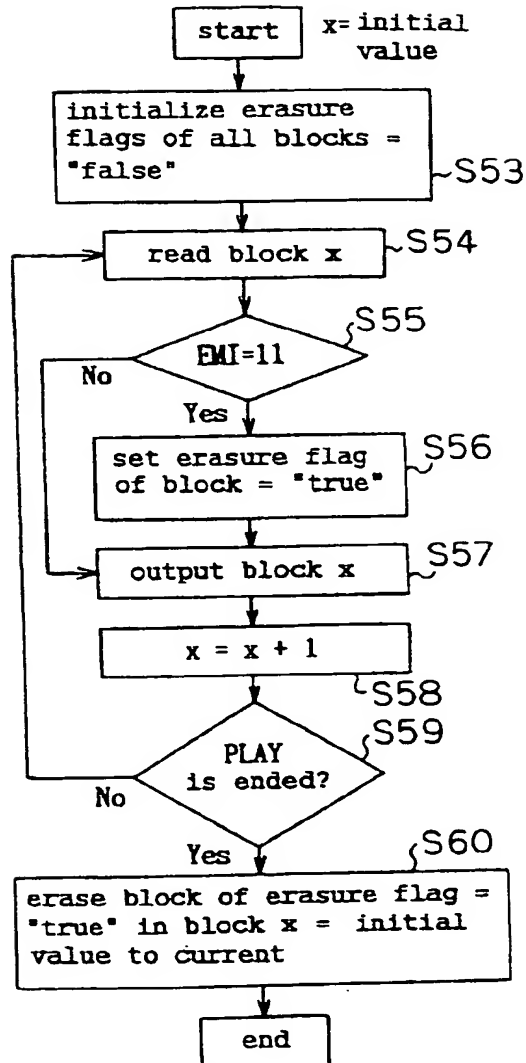


Fig. 47

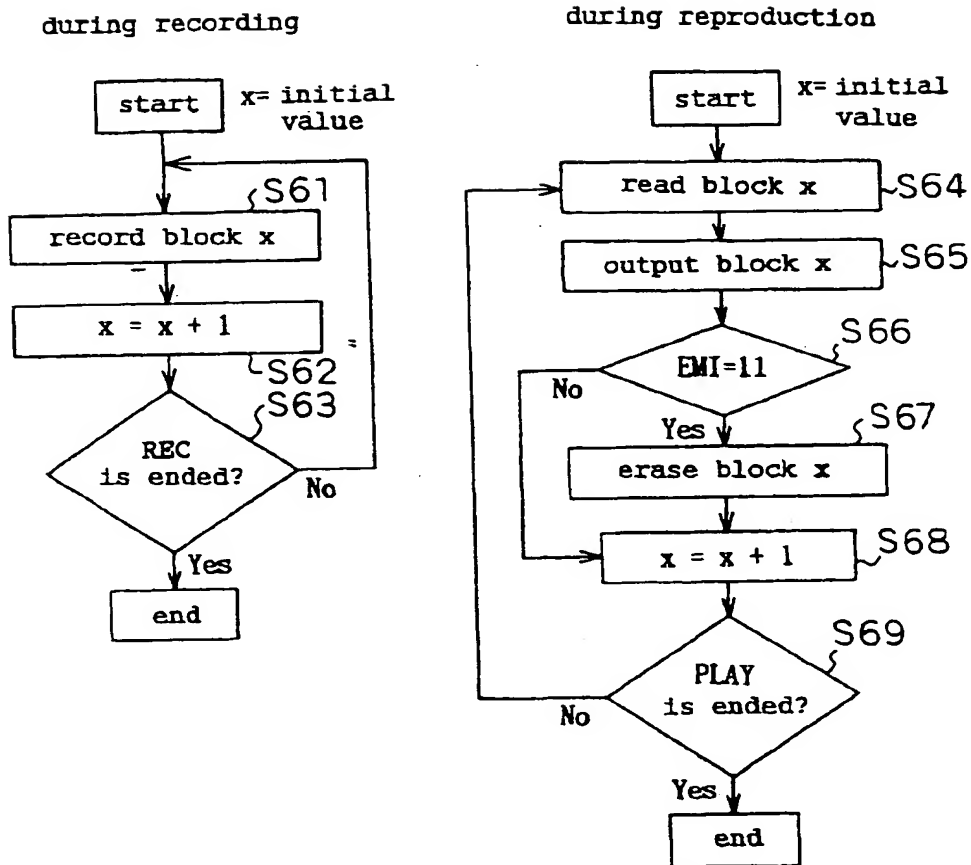


Fig. 48

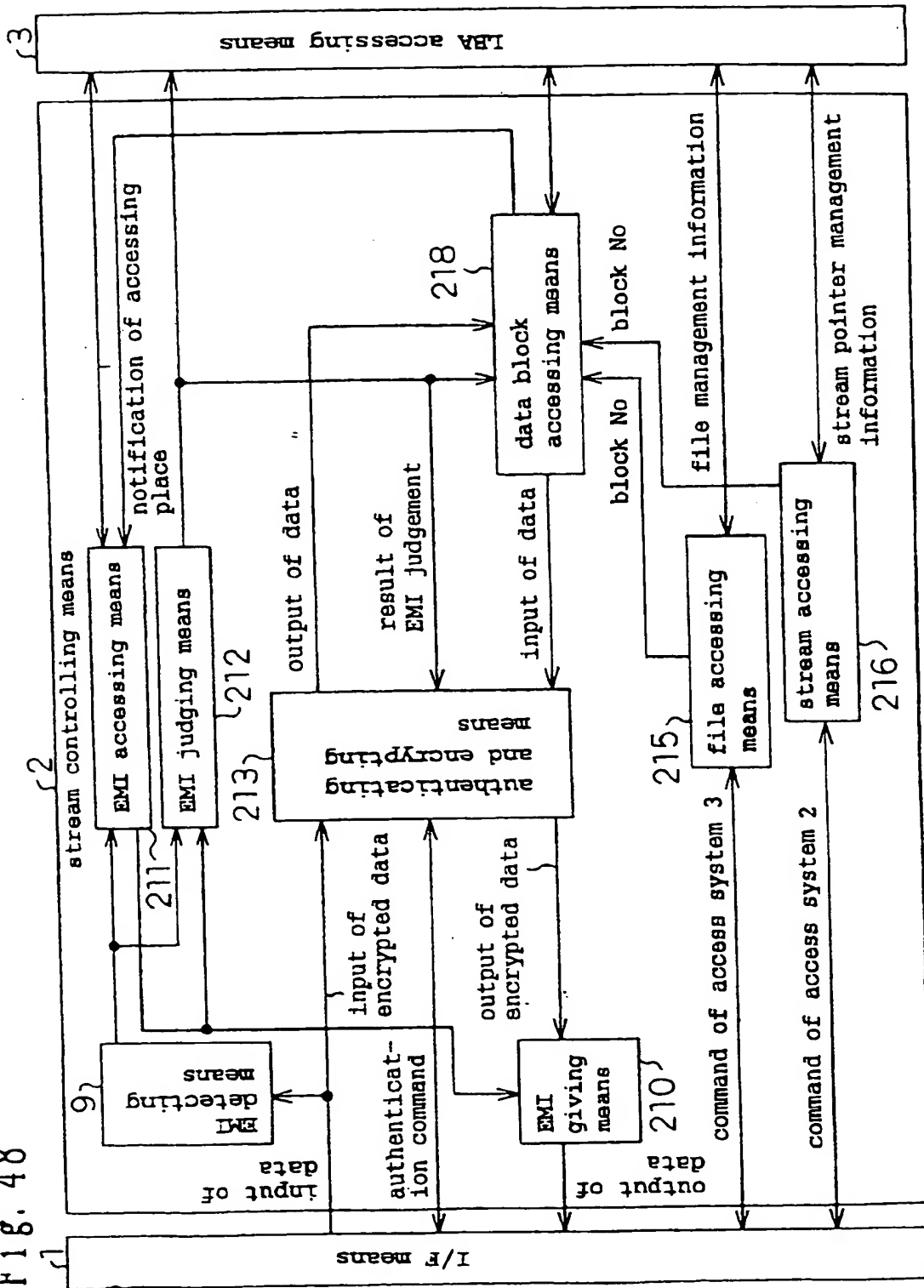


Fig. 49

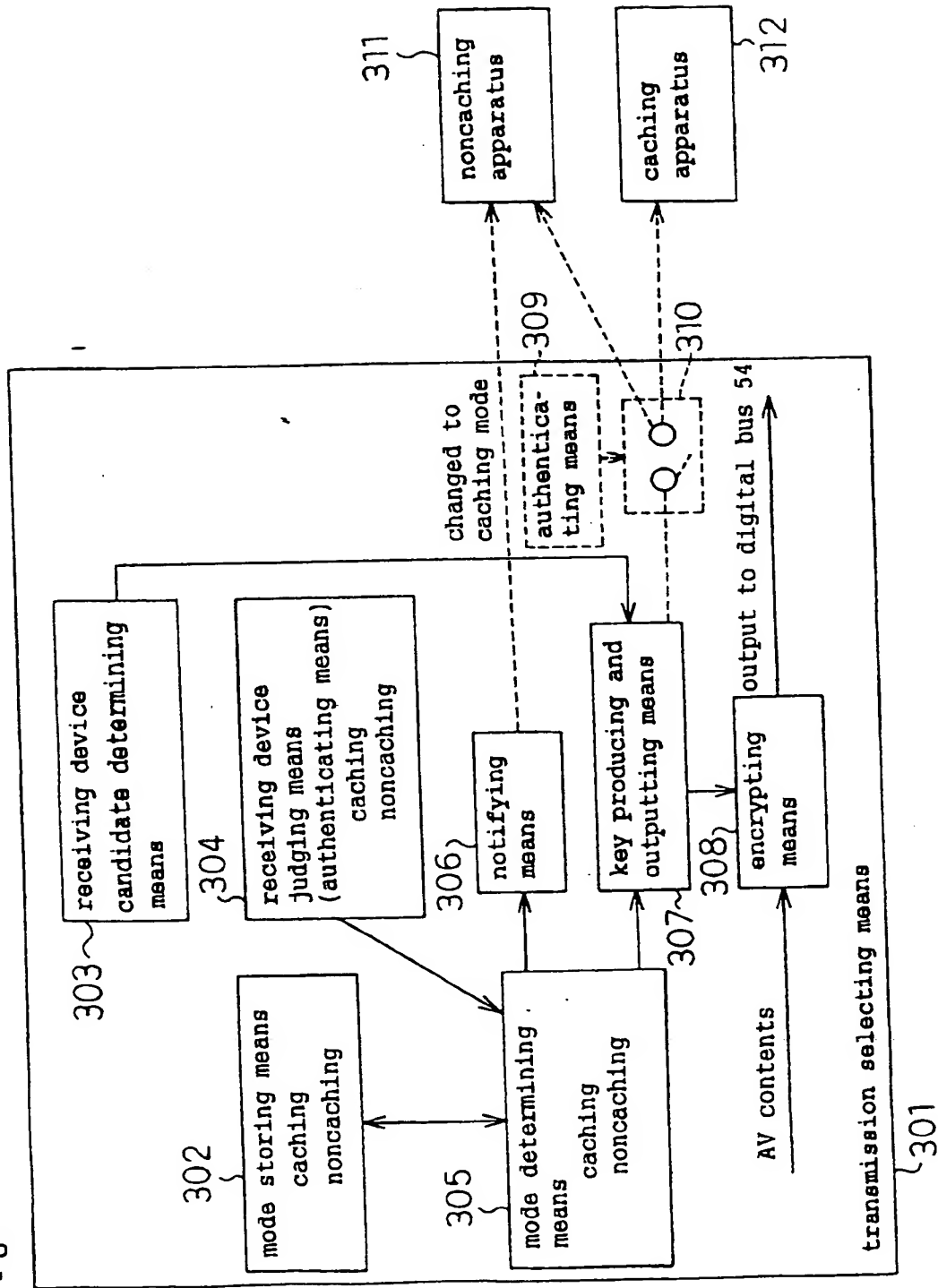


Fig. 50

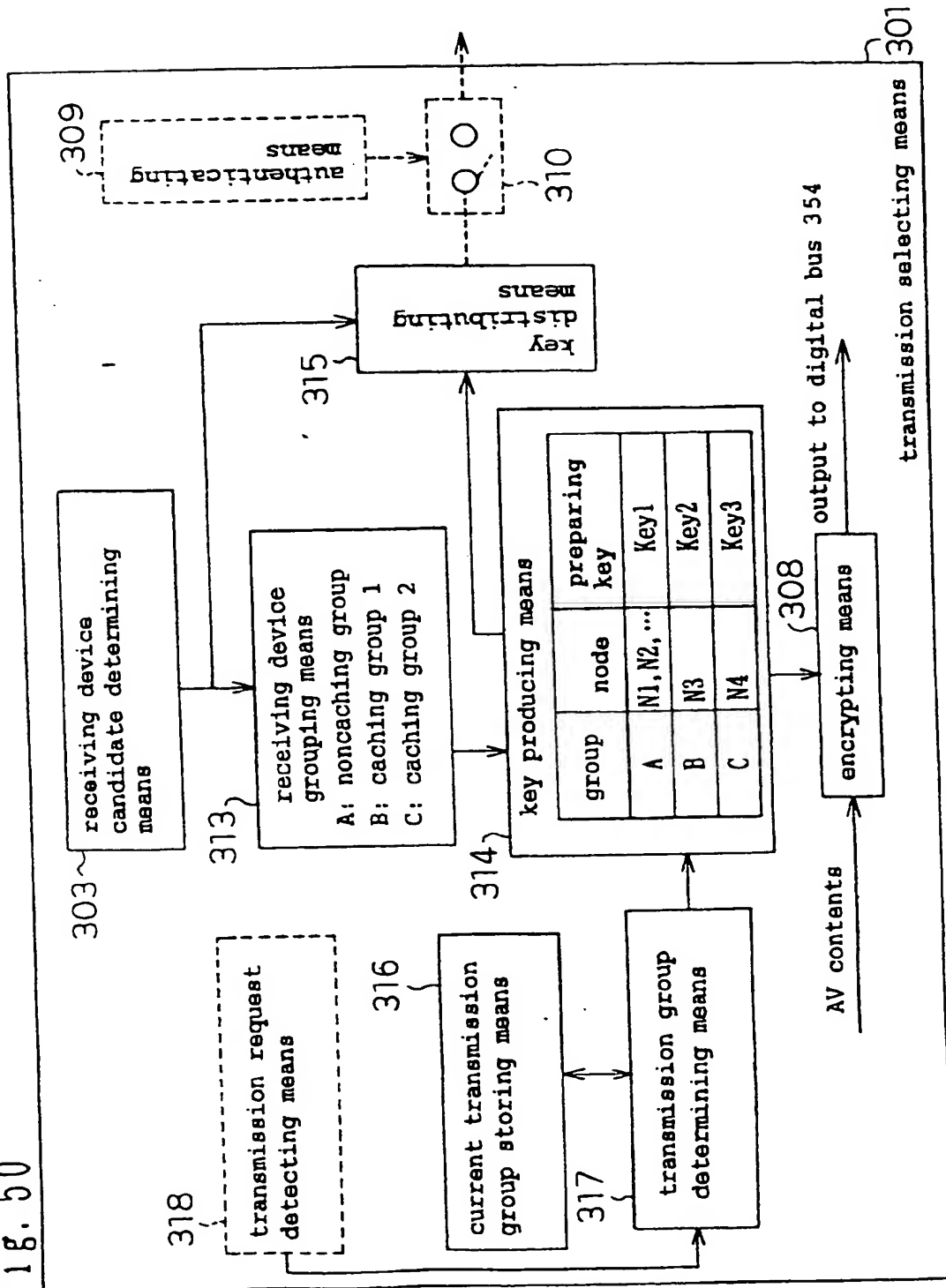


Fig. 51

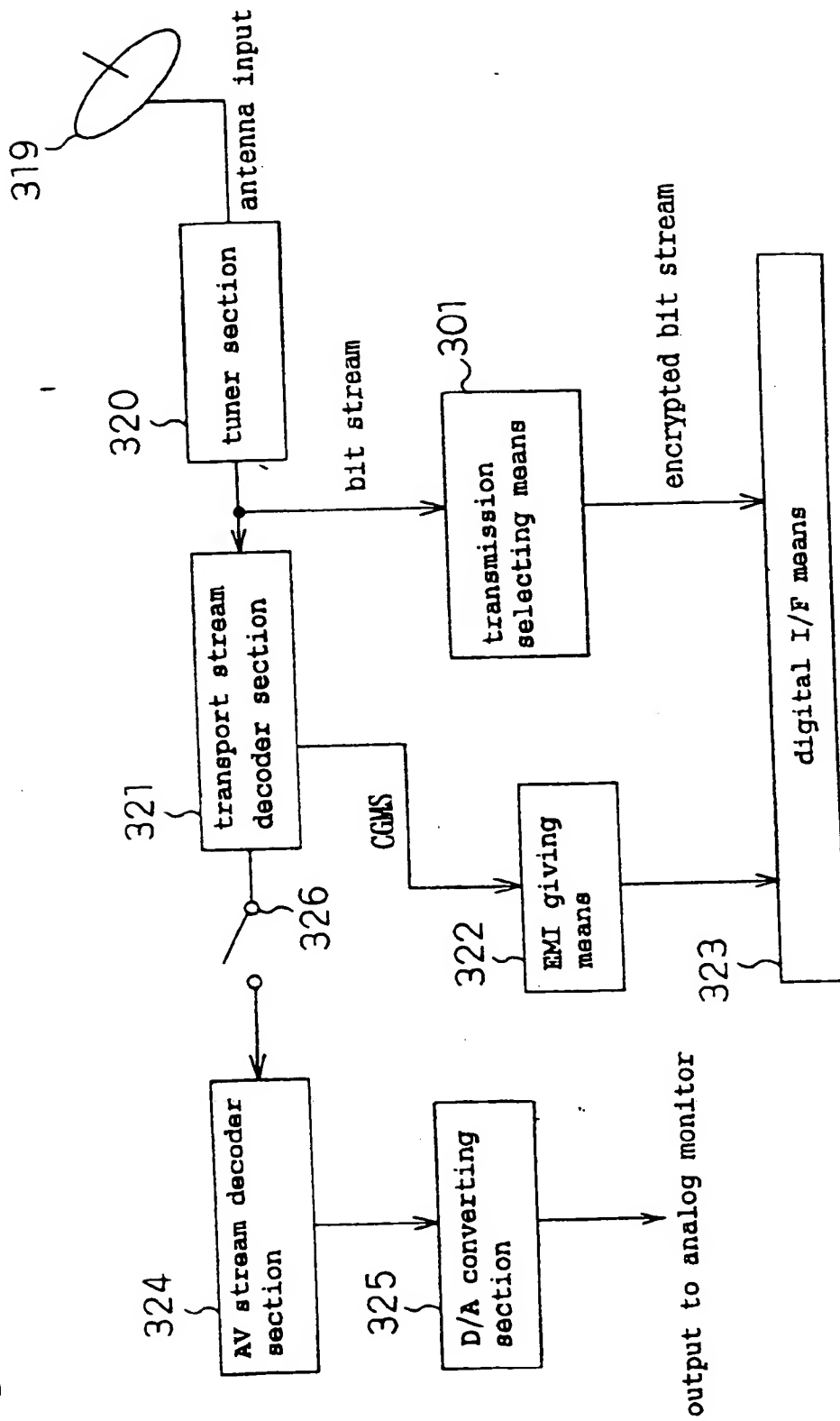
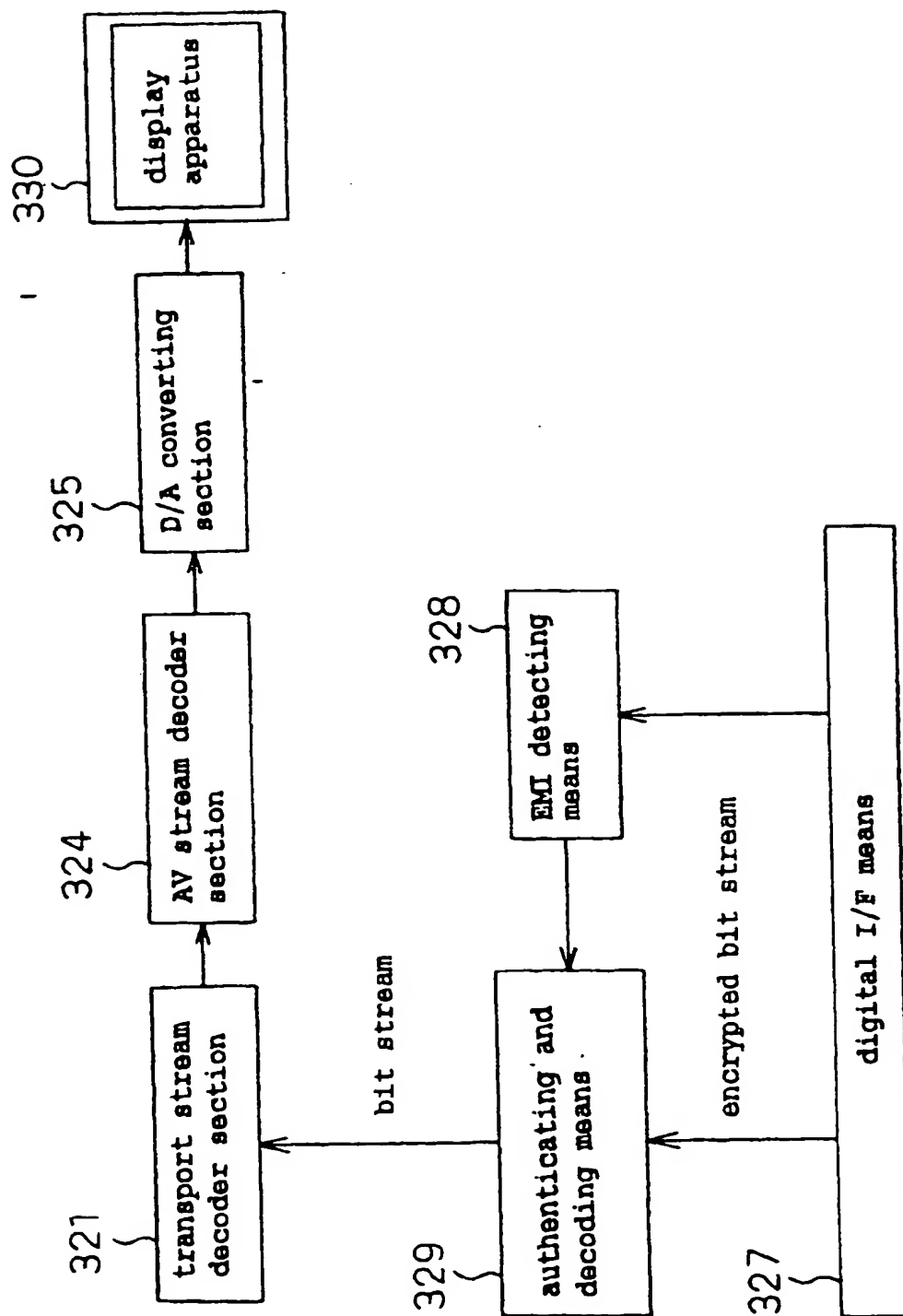


Fig. 52



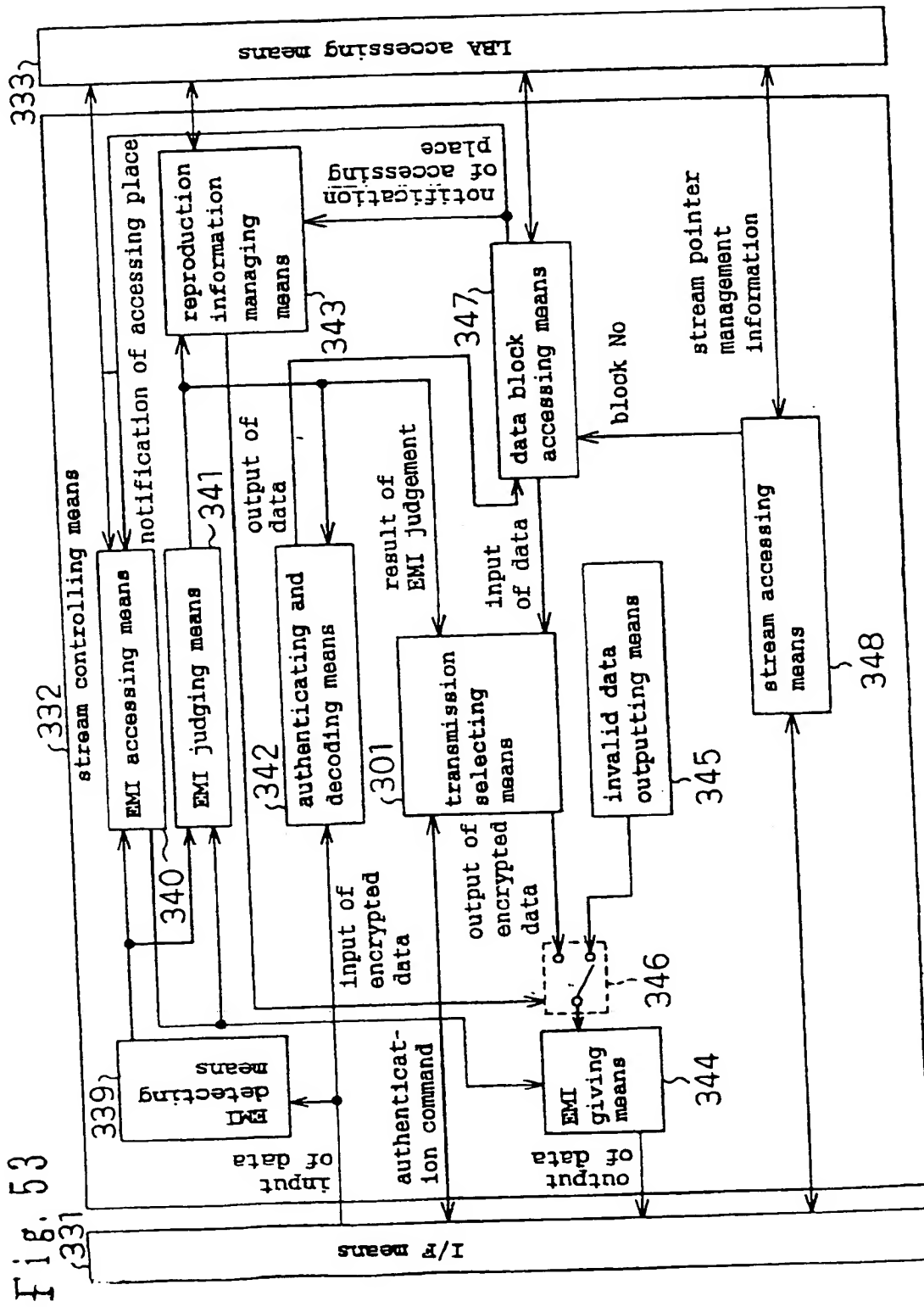


Fig. 54

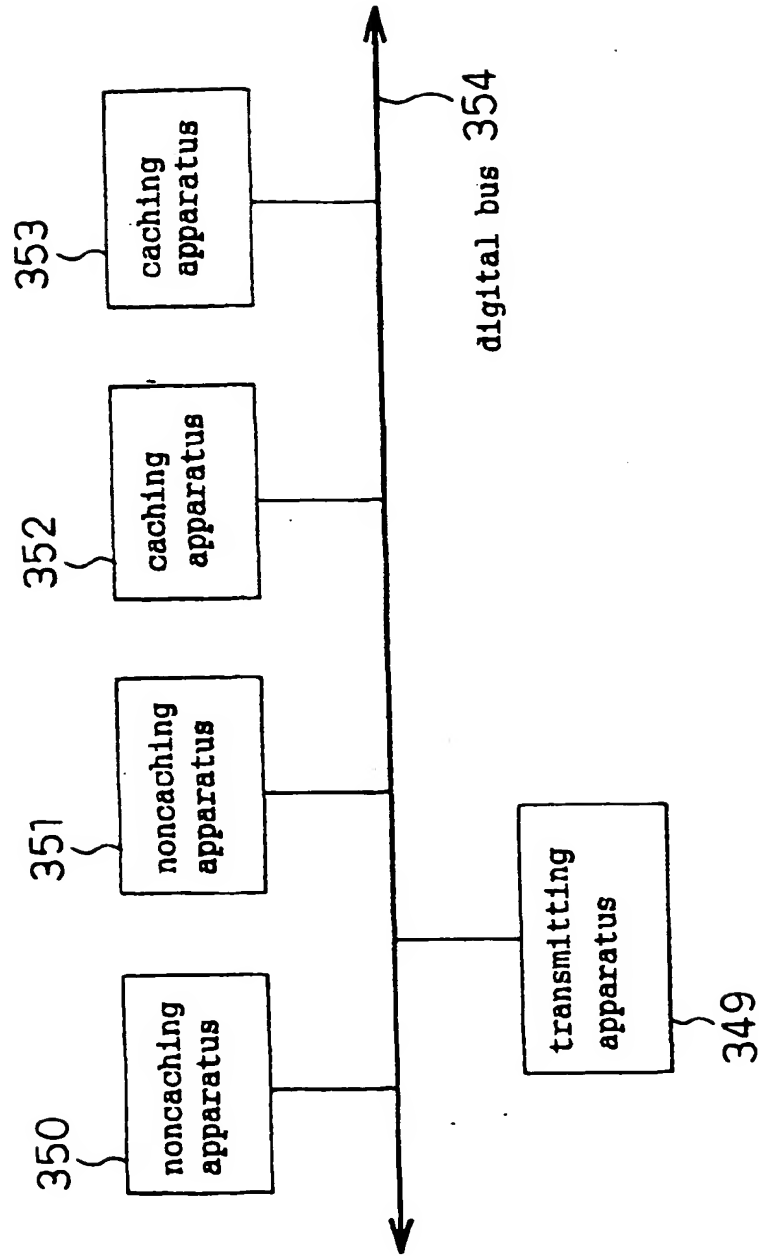
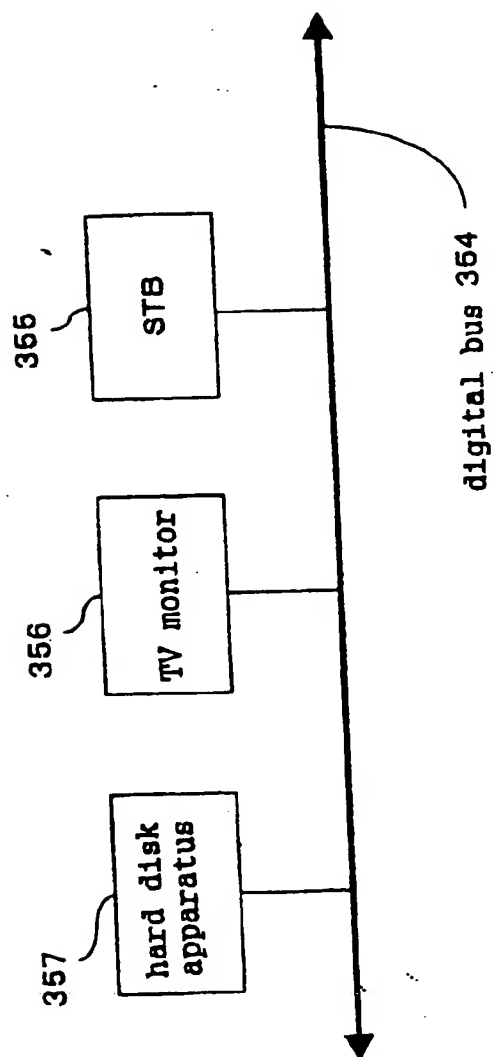


Fig. 55



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/JP99/06000

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
Int.Cl⁷ G11B20/10

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
Int.Cl⁷ G11B20/10Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched
Jitsuyo Shinan Koho 1922-1996 Toroku Jitsuyo Shinan Koho 1994-2000
Kokai Jitsuyo Shinan Koho 1971-2000 Jitsuyo Shinan Toroku Koho 1996-2000

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	JP, 5-258463, A (Sony Corporation), 08 October, 1993 (08.10.93), Full text; Figs. 1 to 6 (Family: none)	1-57
A	JP, 7-230667, A (Hitachi, Ltd.), 29 August, 1995 (29.08.95), Full text; Figs. 1 to 8 & US, 5699370, A	1-57
A	WO, 98/02881, A1 (Toshiba Corporation), 22 January, 1998 (22.01.98), Full text; Figs. 1 to 33 (Family: none)	1-57
A	JP, 10-224752, A (Sony Corporation), 21 August, 1998 (21.08.98), Full text; Figs. 1 to 8 (Family: none)	1-57

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.☐ See patent family annex.

- * Special categories of cited documents:
- "A" documents defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
 - "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
 - "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
 - "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
 - "T" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "I" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
- "A" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search
25 January, 2000 (25.01.00)Date of mailing of the international search report
01 February, 2000 (01.02.00)Name and mailing address of the ISA/
Japanese Patent Office

Authorized officer

Facsimile No.

Telephone No.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

THIS PAGE BLANK (US 10)